



**+ BONUS
AUDIOBOOK**

**HOLIDAYS
IN JAPAN**

LEARN JAPANESE

A COMPLETE PHRASE COMPILATION FOR

***TRAVELING TO
JAPAN***

innovativeLANGUAGE.COM

CLICK HERE to get our Japanese Learning System! Get your **Free Lifetime Account!**



TRAVEL TO JAPAN

Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your
FREE Account

CLICK

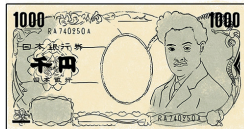
MONEY & SHOPPING

Is there an ATM
nearby?

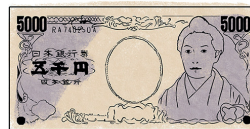
Chikaku ni âtîemu wa
arimasu ka
近くにATMはありますか。

How much is ~?

~ wa ikura desu ka
~ はいくらですか。



one thousand yen
sen-en
千円



five thousand yen
go-sen-en
五千元



ten thousand yen
ichi-man-en
一万円



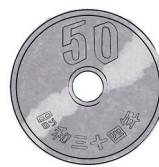
one yen
ichi-en
一円



five yen
go-en
五円



ten yen
jû-en
十円



fifty yen
go-jû-en
五十円



hundred yen
hyaku-en
百円



five hundred yen
go-hyaku-en
五百円

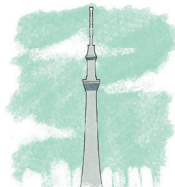
AROUND TOWN

Where is ~?

~ wa doko desu ka
~ はどこですか。

I'd like to go to ~

~ e ikitai no desu ga.
~ へ行きたいのですが。



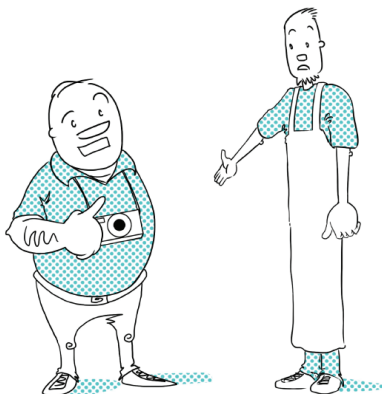
Tokyo Skytree
Tôkyô sukaitsurî
東京スカイツリー



Imperial Palace
Kôkyo
皇居



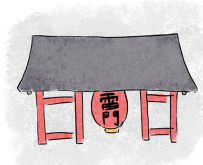
Tokyo Disneyland
Tôkyô deizunîrando
東京ディズニーランド



Akihabara
Akihabara
秋葉原



Tsukiji Fish Market
Tsukijîichiba
築地市場



Kaminarimon
Kaminarimon
雷門

SURVIVAL PHRASES

Please take me to~

~ made o-negai shimasu.
~ までお願いします。

Where is the station?

Eki wa doko desu ka.
駅はどこですか。

Where is the restroom?

Toire wa doko desu ka.
トイレはどこですか。

COMMUNICATION

Hello.

Konnichiwa.
こんにちは。

Excuse me.

Sumimasen.
すみません。

I'm sorry.

Gomennasai.
ごめんなさい。

Excuse me.
Sumimasen.
すみません。

Hello.
Konnichiwa.
こんにちは。

Nice to meet you.

Hajimemashite.
初めまして。

Please.

O-negai shimasu.
お願いします。

Yes.

Hai.
はい。

I am ~

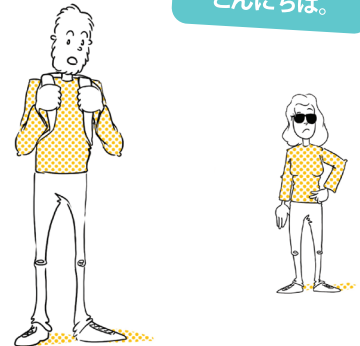
~ desu.
~です。

Thank you.

Arigatō.
ありがとう。

No.

lie.
いいえ。



ASKING QUESTIONS

Do you understand?

Wakarimasu ka.
わかりますか。

I understand.

Wakarimashita.
わかりました。

I don't understand.

Wakarimasen.
わかりません。

I don't understand.
Wakarimasen.
わかりません。

Do you speak English?

Eigo o hanashimasu ka.
英語を話しますか。

Yes, I do.

Hanashimasu.
話します。

No I don't.

Hanashimasen.
話しません。

Can you eat Sushi?

Sushi ga taberaremasu ka.
寿司が食べられますか。

Of course.

Mochiron.
もちろん。

No, I can't eat it.

lie, taberaremasen.
いいえ、食べられません。



ORDERING FOOD



tempura
てんぷら



sushi
寿司



soba
蕎麦



mochi
餅

~ please.
~ o kudasai.
~をください。

What do you recommend?
O-susume wa?
おすすめは?



shabushabu
しゃぶしゃぶ



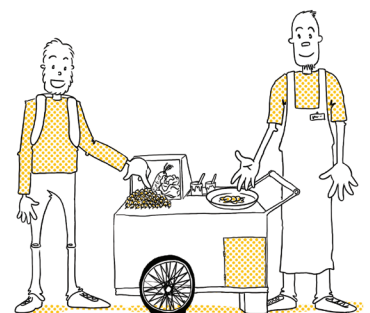
gyūdon
牛丼



yakitori
焼き鳥



nattō
納豆



COUNTERS

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
hitotsu	futatsu	mittsu	yottsu	itsutsu	muttsu	nanatsu	yattsu	kokonotsu	tō
一つ	二つ	三つ	四つ	五つ	六つ	七つ	八つ	九つ	十

How many?
Ikutsu desu ka.
いくつですか。

COUNTERS

FAMILY & RELATIVES


Conversation Cheat Sheet




FAMILY RELATIONS

What kind of person is your ~?


~ wa donna hito desu ka.
~はどんな人ですか。


grandmother
sobo / o-bā-san
祖母・おばあさん


grandfather
sofu / o-jī-san
祖父・おじいさん


uncle
oji / o-ji-san
おじ・おじさん


cousin
itoko
いとこ


aunt
oba / o-ba-san
おば・おばさん


me
watashi
私


father
chi chi / o-tō-san
父・お父さん


mother
haha / o-kā-san
母・お母さん


younger sister
imōto/imōto-san
妹・妹さん


older sister
ane/o-nē-san
姉・お姉さん


older brother
ani/ani-san
兄・兄さん


younger brother
otōto/otōto-san
弟・弟さん


CULTURAL INSIGHT

In Japanese, different words are used when describing your own family and when talking about somebody else's.


LEFT/RIGHT

Your own family/Somone else's family

How's your mother?


 O-kā-san wa genki desu ka?
お母さんは元気ですか。

My mother is well.

 Haha wa genki desu.
母は元気です。

FAMILY RELATIONS


husband
otto/go-shujin
夫・ご主人


wife
tsuma/oku-san
妻・奥さん


son
musuko/musuko san
息子・息子さん


daughter
musume/musume san
娘・娘さん

Forward my greetings to your ~.

~ ni yoroshiku tsutaete
kudasai.
~によろしく伝えてください。

PETS

I own a ~.
~ o katteimasu.
~を飼っています。

dog
inu
犬

cat
neko
猫

bird
tori
鳥

fish
sakana
魚

bunny
usagi
兎

snake
hebi
蛇

FIRST MEETING

Nice to meet you.

Hajimemashite.
初めまして。

Where are you from?

Go-shusshin wa dochira desu ka.
ご出身はどちらですか。

Can I sit here?

Koko ni suwatte mo ii desu ka.
ここに座ってもいいですか。

What's your name?

O-namae wa?
お名前は?

I'm from Tokyo.

Watashi wa Tōkyō shusshin desu.
私は東京出身です。

What is this?

Kore wa nan desu ka.
これは何ですか。

How are you?

O-genki desu ka.
お元気ですか。

This is for you.

Kore, dōzo.
これ、どうぞ。

How long will you stay?

Dorekurai taizai shimasu ka.
どれくらい滞在しますか。

I've heard a lot about you.

O-uwasa wa kanegane ukagatte
orimasu.
おうわさは、かねがね伺っております。

How many people are there in your family?

Nan-nin kazoku desu ka.
何人家族ですか。

It was nice to meet you.

O-ai dekite yokatta desu.
お会いできて良かったです。

HOLIDAYS AND OBSERVANCES

What do you do on ~?
~ ni nani o shimasu ka.
~になにをしますか。

When is ~?

~wa itsu desu ka.
~はいつですか。

Please tell me more about ~.

~no koto o motto oshiete
kudasai.
~のことをもっと教えて
ください。



White Day
Howaitodē
ホワイトデー



Doll's Festival
Hinamatsuri
雛祭り



Star Festival
Tanabata matsuri
七夕祭り



7-5-3 Day
Shichi go san
七五三



Sea Day
Umi no Hi
海の日



Mountain Day
Yama no Hi
山の日



Coming of Age Day
Seijin no Hi
成人の日



Children's Day
Kodomo no Hi
子供の日

CELEBRATIONS

Happy birthday!

O-tanjōbi omedetō!
お誕生日おめでとう。

April Fools!

Eipurirufūru!
エイプリルフール!

Merry Christmas!

Merikurisumasu!
メリークリスマス!

Congratulations!

Omedetō.
おめでとう。

Happy New Year!

Akemashite omedetō
gozaimasu.
あけましておめでとうございます。

Happy Halloween!

Happiharowīn!
ハッピーハロウィーン!

CLICK HERE to get our Japanese Learning System! Get your **Free Lifetime Account!**



DINING LIKE A CHAMP

Conversation Cheat Sheet

Create Your
FREE Account

CLICK

Phrases You Need to Know at the Dining Table

I have a reservation at nine.

Kuji ni yoyaku shite arimasu.
9時に予約してあります。

Do you have a table for two?

Nimē yō no seki arimasu ka?
2名用の席ありますか？

May I have a menu?

Menyū morae masuka?
メニューもらえますか？

May I order?

Chūmon shite mo īdesu ka?
注文してもいいですか？

What do you recommend?

Osusume wa nan desu ka?
オススメはなんですか？

I'll have this, please.

Kore onegaishimasu.
これをお願いします。

Excuse me.

Sumimasen.
すみません。

My order hasn't come yet.

Chūmon shita mono ga mada konai
no desu ga.
注文したものがまだ来ないのですが。

Check, please.

Oaisō.
お愛想。

Top Words You'll Need at the Restaurant

POINT & SPEAK

kaiwachō
会話帳

~ please.
~onagai shimasu.
~おねがいします。



appetizer

zensai
前菜



main dish

mein disshu
メインディッシュ



dessert

dezāto
デザート



chicken

tori niku
鶏肉



beef

gyū niku
牛肉



pork

buta niku
豚肉



salad

sarada
サラダ



seafood

gyokai-rui
魚介類

What are today's specials?

Kyō no supesharu wa nan desu ka?
今日のスペシャルは何ですか？

Can I have a drink menu?

Nomimono no menyū o kuremasu ka?
飲み物のメニューをくれますか？

Can I have some more ~?

~no okawari o kudasai.
~のおかわりをください。

Counters

1

hitotsu
一つ

2

futatsu
二つ

3

mittsu
三つ

4

yottsu
四つ

5

itsutsu
五つ

6

muttsu
六つ

7

nanatsu
七つ

8

yattsu
八つ

9

kokonotsu
九つ

10

jukko
十こ

How to Choose The Best Foods to Fit Your Preferences

With ~, please.

~iri de onegai shimasu.

～入りをお願いします。

meat

niku
肉

fish

sakana
魚

vegetables

yasai
野菜

butter

batā
バター

sugar

satō
砂糖

olive oil

orību oiru
オリーブオイル

Without ~, please.

~nashi de onegai shimasu.

～なしをお願いします。

bell pepper

pīman
ピーマン

onions

tamanegi
玉ねぎ

wine

wain
ワイン

cheese

chīzu
チーズ

tomato

tomato
トマト

alcohol

arukōru
アルコール

Does this dish contains any ~?

Kono ryōri niwa ~ga haitte imasu ka?

この料理には～が入っていますか？

I can't eat/drink ~.

Watashi wa ~ o taberu/nomu
koto ga dekimasen.

私は～を食べる/飲むことができません。

Please remove ~ from this dish.

Kono ryōri kara ~ o totte kuremasu ka?

この料理から～を取ってくれますか？

Table Request In The Restaurant

Can you bring me (a) ~?

~ o motte kite kuremasu ka?

～をもってきてくれますか？

I need (a) ~.

~ ga hitsuyō
desu.

～が必要です。

spoon

supūn
スプーン

fork

fōku
フォーク

knife

naifu
ナイフ

napkin

napukin
ナプキン

salt

shio
塩

black pepper

koshō
胡椒

water

mizu
水

bread

pan
パン

drink

nomimono
飲み物

menu

menyū
メニュー

coffee

kōhī
コーヒー

dessert

dezāto
デザート

Complimenting and Criticizing the Food

It's delicious!

Oishii desu ne!

美味しいですね！

It looks tasty.

Oishi sō desu ne.

おいしそうですね。

It's very good.

Totemo oishī desu.

とてもおいしいです。

It's overcooked.

Kore wa nisugi/yakisugi desu.

これは煮過ぎ/焼き過ぎです。

It lacks salt.

Shio ga tarimasen.

塩が足りません。

It's raw!

Nama desu!

生です！

It smells so nice.

Ī nioi ga shimasu.

いいにおいがします。

This is not fresh.

Kore wa shinsen dewa arimasen.

これは新鮮ではありません。

It's too spicy.

Karasugimasu.

辛すぎます。

Food Allergies & Restrictions!

I am allergic to ~.

Watashi wa ~ no are-
rugī ga arimasu.

私は～のアレルギーが
あります。

meat

niku
肉

eggs

tamago
卵

milk

gyūnyū
牛乳

peanuts

pīnattsu
ピーナッツ

shellfish

kōkakurui
甲殻類

wheat

mugi
麦

soy

daizu
大豆

fish

sakana
魚

I am a vegetarian.

Watashi wa bejitarian desu.

私はベジタリアンです。

I am a vegan.

Watashi wa bīgan desu.

私はビーガンです。

I can't eat pork.

Butaniku wa taberaremasen.

豚肉は食べられません。



Save 50% on any
JapanesePod101.com subscription
with coupon code

AUDIOBOOK

Gain access to hundreds of audio and video lessons, lesson notes, online vocabulary, flashcards, the voice recording tool and more with a Basic or Premium Subscription!

Click here to get started today!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #1

Thank You!

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Vocabulary Phrase Usage
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

#1

KANJI

1. どうもありがとうございます。
2. どうも。
3. ありがとう。

KANA

1. どうもありがとうございます。
2. どうも。
3. ありがとう。

ROMANIZATION

1. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.
2. Dōmo.
3. Arigatō.

ENGLISH

1. Thank you very much. (very formal)
2. (A phrase used to elevate the politeness level of words following it.)

CONT'D OVER

3. Thank you.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
どうも	どうも	dōmo	Thanks
ありがとう。	ありがとう。	arigatō	Thank you.
どうもありがとうございます。 ざいます。	どうもありがとうございます。 ざいます。	Dōmo arigato gozaimasu.	Thank you very much. (very formal)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

どうもありがとうございます。 <i>Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.</i> Thank you very much.	教えてくれてありがとう。 <i>Oshiete kurete arigatō.</i> Thank you for telling me.
来ていただいて、どうもありがとうございます。 <i>Kiteitadaite, dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.</i> Thank you for coming.	

VOCABULARY PHRASE USAGE

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

As in other languages, there are casual and formal ways of saying "Thank you." Let's start with the casual form. "Thanks" is *Dōmo* or *Arigatō*. This is the shortest, simplest way of saying "Thank you", so there is no excuse for you not to know this! We use these words

among friends or in other casual situations. However, until you get the hang of it, it might be better to keep things formal.

In Japanese, politeness level is very important. *Arigatō* is okay, but a more polite phrase we recommend is *Arigatō gozaimasu*. The addition of *gozaimasu* increases the politeness level of the phrase. You will encounter this phrase when you are visiting places of business. When you purchase something, you will surely hear this phrase or a derivative of it.

For very special occasions, when someone goes beyond the call of being kind, when someone is extremely generous, or any time we're extremely grateful, we use the following phrase to express exceptional gratitude: *Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu*, "Thank you very much". The first word, *Dōmo*, raises the politeness level. This is followed by *arigato*, which is "thank you." And finally, *gozaimasu*, which raises the politeness level another notch. When you use these three components together in the same sentence, they form an extremely polite phrase for expressing one's gratitude.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: When "Sorry" means "Thank you."

Tip #1

Sachiko's Secret for this lesson is about culture. In Japan, sometimes we say "sorry" when we actually want to thank someone for doing something. We say "sorry" to mean, "I appreciate your efforts, and I'm sorry for any inconvenience I may have caused." For example, if someone gets out of the way so you can move, or someone offers a seat to you on a train, the one receiving the favor may say *Sumimasen* instead of saying "Thank you." *Sumimasen* means "Excuse me" or "I'm sorry". Among friends, we may use a more casual way to say "I'm sorry", which is *Gomen* or *Gomen ne*. In Japan, we are taught that the biggest sin is to inconvenience other people or disrupt harmony in society. So whenever we feel that we have inconvenienced someone, we apologize. And many times, the listener understands that the apology also expresses gratitude. It may sound strange and difficult to understand now, but when you come to Japan and hear it often enough with your own ears, you will start to understand how the culture works.

Tip #2

In Japanese, we like to use English words in our day-to-day lives, but we inevitably pronounce them the Japanese way. The phrase "Thank you" is no different. Because we don't have the sound for "th" in Japanese, we substitute the "s" sound. We also don't have the thick "a" sound as in "apple" and "thank," so we substitute the light sound heard in "sun." So when a Japanese person tries to say "Thank you," it sounds more like [Sun kyu.] You may hear this

a lot because people assume all foreigners speak English. So keep your ears open! When we say [Sun kyu], we mean, "Thank you." Another tidbit: Phonetically, [Sun kyu] sounds like the Japanese words for the numbers "three" and "nine," and it sounds like "maternity leave" as well, depending on the intonation!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #2

You're Welcome

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

KANJI

1. どういたしまして。
2. いいえ、いいえ。
3. とんでもないです。
4. こちらこそ。

KANA

1. どういたしまして。
2. いいえ、いいえ。
3. とんでもないです。
4. こちらこそ。

ROMANIZATION

1. Dōitashimashite.
2. lie, iie.
3. Tondemo nai desu.
4. Kochira koso.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. You're welcome.
2. It's no big deal. Don't mention it.
3. Oh, no. Thank YOU! (polite form)
4. The pleasure is mine. (polite form)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
どういたしまして	どういたしまして	dō itashimashite	You're welcome. Don't mention it.
いいえ、いいえ。	いいえ、いいえ。	lie, iie	It's no big deal. Don't mention it.
とんでもないです	とんでもないです	Tondemo naidesu	Oh, no. Thank YOU! (polite form)
こちらこそ	こちらこそ	Kochira koso	The pleasure is mine. (polite form)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>A:ありがとうございます。 B:どういたしまして。 A: Arigatō gozaimasu. B: Dō itashimashite.</p> <p>A: Thank you very much. B: You're welcome.</p>	<p>A「どうもありがとうございます」 B「いいえ、いいえ。」 A: Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu B: lie, iie.</p> <p>A. Thank you very much! B. You're welcome.</p>
---	--

A. 「お昼ごはん、ありがとうございます。」 B. 「とんでもないです」

A: *O-hirugohan, arigatōgozaimasu* B: *Tondemonai desu.*

A: Thank you for paying for my lunch. B: No, thank you.

A. 「ありがとうございます」 B 「こちらこそ」

A. *Arigatō gozaimasu* B. *kochirakoso*

A. Thank you very much B.No, thank you!

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

The most common way of saying "You're welcome" is *Dō itashimashite*. This is a polite form that we can use with friends, colleagues, senior colleagues, supervisors, and those significantly older than you. You use it in situations where you feel comfortable being thanked. In other words, if you think your actions deserve an expression of appreciation. If someone thanks you for giving them a gift, or answering their question, you could say *Dō itashimashite*, because it's pretty natural for you to be thanked for gestures like that.

But if you think your actions did not deserve thanks, you might want to say a phrase that means, "Don't mention it." In Japanese, we have casual and formal ways of saying this. In a casual situation, you would use *lie, iie*, which literally translates as "No, no", meaning "It's no big deal." For example, when someone thanks you for giving up your seat on the train or picking up something that fell to the floor, saying *lie, iie* conveys the feeling that you thought it was only natural for you to give up your seat or pick up the object, and so you deserve no credit for the courtesy. Remember, use *lie, iie* in response to casual gestures and for casual situations. Most likely, in such situations the person will have thanked you using a casual form such as *Dōmo arigatō*.

For more formal situations, we use *Tondemo nai desu*. Like *lie iie*, *Tondemo nai desu* means, "What I did is really no big deal." But use this phrase in situations where the deeds are a bit more serious and in situations in which both parties benefit. For example, if you go to a job interview and the interviewer thanks you for coming, you should say *Tondemo nai desu*, meaning, "Oh, no. Thank YOU for taking the time out of your busy schedule to interview me." Here's another example. If you were to visit a friend in the intensive care unit, the sick person's family would probably go to great lengths to thank you politely. They would probably say *Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu*. And because they're being so polite and the situation is so serious, you should respond with the same degree of politeness and seriousness. In this situation, *Tondemo nai desu* is the most appropriate response to convey that feeling of "Of course I came. He/she is such a close friend of mine."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tip #1

And now, Sachiko's Secret. Here is a phrase I like to use in conjunction with the phrases we're learning today. After I say, "Don't mention it," I often add *Kochira koso*, which literally means, "Me, too" in a polite way. But we translate it as "No, no, I should be thanking you," or "The pleasure was mine." It's a short way of saying, "I feel we can share the appreciation we have for each other and connect on a deeper level." And the other person doesn't feel obligated to return the favor.

Tip #2

Speaking of obligations, Japan has a meticulous custom of gift giving. People give each other gifts at every opportunity. For example, if you have children, then friends, neighbors, and relatives will give gifts for your children's birthdays, enrollments in new schools, graduations, Christmas, New Year, and more. Strictly speaking, each time you receive a gift you're supposed to reciprocate with a gift that is roughly half the price of the gift you receive. Yes, each and every time. Things can get really busy sometimes, especially if you just got married or had a child. You'll be showered with gifts - which is great - but you'll have a huge to-do list waiting for you. To avoid this mess, I usually ask my friends to come to my birthday parties empty-handed.

Tip #3

Japanese often include gestures to go with "You're welcome." In a casual setting, when we say, *lie, iie* ("No, no, don't mention it"), we typically wave one hand back and forth as we talk. When we say, *Do itashimashite*, typically we nod our heads a bit as if to offer a slight bow. When using the most polite form, *Tondemo nai desu*, we typically do both, wave the hand and bow. But the bow should be a bit more formal (i.e., we bow lower than we would in a casual setting).

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #3

This Please

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

3

KANJI

1. これ下さい。
2. それ下さい。
3. お願いします。
4. お願い。
5. 違います。

KANA

1. これください。
2. それください。
3. おねがいします。
4. おねがい。
5. ちがいます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kore kudasai.
2. Sore kudasai.
3. O-negaishimasu.

CONT'D OVER

4. O-negai.
5. Chigaimasu.

ENGLISH

1. Please give me this.
2. Please give me that.
3. Please take care of this. Please take this on. (polite form)
4. Please! (casual form)
5. It's wrong.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
これ下さい。	これください。	Kore kudasai	Please give me this.
切符	きっぷ	kippu	ticket
それ	それ	sore	that
これ	これ	kore	this
下さい	ください	kudasai	please
違います	ちがいます	Chigaimasu	That's wrong
お願い	おねがい	onegai	please
お願いします。	おねがいします。	Onegai shimasu.	Please.
それ下さい。	それください。	Sore kudasai	Please give me that.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>A「いらっしゃいませ。」 B「これ下さい。」</p> <p>A: <i>Irasshaimase.</i> B: <i>kore kudasai.</i></p> <p>A: May I help you? B: I'll take this.</p>	<p>二枚切符を下さい。</p> <p><i>Ni mai kippu wo kudasai.</i></p> <p>Two tickets please.</p>
<p>それは、日本茶ですか。</p> <p><i>Sore wa nihon-cha desu ka.</i></p> <p>Is that Japanese tea?</p>	<p>あれ？これは私のですか。</p> <p><i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>
<p>水を下さい。</p> <p><i>Mizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have some water, please?</p>	<p>それは、違います。</p> <p><i>Sore wa chigaimasu.</i></p> <p>That's not right.</p>
<p>サインをお願いします。</p> <p><i>Sain wo onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Your signature (autograph), please.</p>	<p>お会計をお願いします。</p> <p><i>O-kaikei o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Check, please.</p>
<p>A「どれにしますか」 B「それください」</p> <p>A: <i>Dore ni shimasu ka.</i> B: <i>Sore kudasai.</i></p> <p>A: What would you like? B: I'll take that.</p>	<p>地図をください。</p> <p><i>Chizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please give me the map.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Please" is *Kudasai*. To say that you want something, you can just point at it and say, *Kudasai*, but that is the most rudimentary way of using it. Let's try to build a bit on this simplicity, shall we? Let's start with the expression, "This, please," which in Japanese is *Kore kudasai*. In English, "this" comes before "please." In Japanese, the word order is the same. In Japanese, the word for "this," *kore*, precedes *kudasai*.

While we're looking at "this," we should look at "that," which is *sore*. The phrase "That, please" is *Sore kudasai*.

If you're in a store, you can simply point to the items you want to buy and say, *Kore kudasai*. If you point to something, but the salesperson picks the wrong thing, you can say, *Chigaimasu*, which means, "That's wrong," or in this context, "You have the wrong one." Then point to the one you need and repeat *Kore kudasai*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Restaurants and Travel by Public Transportation in Japan

Tip #1

Tokyo has a great variety of restaurants to choose from so I highly recommend eating out. But what do you do if you can't order your food in Japanese? Don't worry. Most restaurants in Japan offer menus with pictures so you can simply point at the pictures of foods and beverages you want to order. Also you can point at the numbers on the menu. I actually do that myself. It avoids confusion when several dishes look or sound similar. And the food in the pictures looks so delicious, I just can't help myself!

Tip #2

Onegai (casual form) and *Onegai shimasu* (polite form) also convey the idea of "Please." Children often use the word *Onegai!!* when begging their parents to buy them something or to let them do something. Adults use this word as well, but most of the time, only among close friends. It's very casual. Business conversations also often use the phrase *Onegai shimasu* to mean, "Please take on this task," or "Please take care of it."

Tip #3

Let's also go over some key vocabulary you will be using during your trip to Japan. Public transportation is essential and very convenient for getting around metropolitan Japan. You'll probably need to get tickets, which in Japanese is *kippu*. Maps will come in handy so remember the word *chizu* for map. To ask for these items, simply replace the words *kore* and *sore* with the name of the item you need. Let's practice. "Please give me a ticket" is *Kippu o kudasai*. "Please give me a map" is *Chizu o kudasai*. The *o* in the middle is an object-marking particle. (There should be an *o* in *kore kudasai*, but we often omit it in spoken Japanese.) And regardless of how many tickets or maps you want, the noun does not change form. In Japanese, nouns do not have singular and plural forms. It's always *chizu* and *kippu*.

We'll go over how to buy bus tickets and train tickets in upcoming lessons.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #4

Basic Greetings

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

4

KANJI

1. お早うございます。
2. 今日は。
3. 今晚は。
4. おかげ様で。
5. お元気ですか？

KANA

1. おはようございます。
2. こんにちは。
- 3.こんばんは。
4. おかげさまで。
5. おげんきですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. O-hayō gozaimasu.
2. Konnichi wa.
3. Konban wa.

CONT'D OVER

4. O-kage sama de.
5. O-genki desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Good morning.
2. Good afternoon.
3. Good evening.
4. Thanks to you.
5. How are you? (Are you doing well?)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
おはようございます	おはようございます。	ohayō gozaimasu	Good morning.
今日は	こんにちは	konnichiwa	Hello. Good afternoon.
今晚は	こんばんは	konbanwa	good evening
今日	きょう	kyō	today
おかげ様で。	おかげさまで。	O-kage-sama de.	Thanks to you. Thanks for asking.
はい	はい	hai	Yes.
お元気ですか。	おげんきですか。	Ogenki desu ka	How are you?

SAMPLE SENTENCES

先生、おはようございます。 <i>Sensei, ohayō gozaimasu.</i> Good morning, Teacher.	酒井さん、今日は。 <i>Sakai-san, konnichiwa.</i> Hello, Mr./Ms. Sakai.
スミスさん、今晚は。 <i>Sumisu-san, konbanwa.</i> Good evening, Mr/Ms. Smith.	今日は暑いです。 <i>Kyō wa atsui desu.</i> It's hot today.
A「お元気ですか。」 B「おかげ様で。」 <i>A: O-genki desu ka. B: O-kage sama de.</i> A: How are you? B: Fine, thanks for asking.	A「田中さんですか。」 B「はい。」 <i>A: Tanaka-san desu ka. B: Hai.</i> A: Are you Mr. Tanaka? B: Yes.
A.「お元気ですか。」 B.「はい、すごく元気です。」 <i>A. Ogenki desu ka. B. Hai, sugoku genki desu.</i> A: How are you? B: I'm great!	山田さんは元気な人です。 <i>Yamada-san wa genki na hito desu.</i> Mr./Ms. Yamada is an energetic person.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Good morning" is *Ohayō gozaimasu*. The first sound, *o*, is an honorific form for the next word. *Hayō* is a conjugated form of the word that means, "early." And the last word is *gozaimasu*, which is the polite way of saying "is." So it sounds like we're saying, "It's early," but to Japanese, it means, "Good morning."

In Japanese, "Good afternoon" is *Konnichi wa*. The first word, *konnichi*, is one way of saying "today." The last word is the topic-marking particle *wa*. The greeting literally means, "Today is." It sounds like an incomplete sentence, doesn't it? That's because it is. Long ago, Japanese people used to greet each other by talking about the weather, (e.g., "Today is sunny, isn't it?"). And since all the greetings started with *Konnichi wa*, this part became the greeting itself. Now, all Japanese understand *Konnichi wa*, literally "Today is," to mean "Good afternoon."

And finally, Japanese also uses an evening greeting, *Konban wa*. The first word, *Konban*, means, "tonight." The second word is the topic-marking particle *wa*. Notice the greeting is very similar to *Konnichi wa*, both in form and history. People used to greet each other in the evening by talking about the weather, and so on. For example, *Konban wa samui desu ne*, which means, "Tonight is chilly." Over time, the greeting shortened to just *Konban wa*, meaning, "Good evening."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Morning, Noon, and Night in Osaka

Tip #1

Time for Sachiko's Secret. I don't know about the media industry in other countries, but when I worked in the Japanese media industry, people greeted each other with *Ohayō gozaimasu* - *Ohayo* for short - even in the afternoon or at night. It seemed like an industry term used to greet someone for the first time that day. So even at 3 PM or 9 PM, we would say "Good Morning" to each other. Strange. So don't be surprised if someone in Japan says "Good Morning" to you at 11 PM. It's probably just a media person.

Tip #2

As you may guess, we often use *konnichi wa* to mean "Hello" at any time of day. So if remembering all three phrases is too much, just remember *konnichi wa*.

Now in the PDF, notice that the Japanese letters for *konnichi wa* and *konban wa* are actually written as *konnichi ha* and *konban ha*. That's because the character (は) changes in pronunciation depending on how we use it. When we use (は) as a particle, it's pronounced *wa*. And as we mentioned in Sachiko's Secret, the *wa* in *konnichi wa* was originally the topic-marking particle in a longer sentence.

Tip #3

Here is another sentence that often follows "Hello." In Japanese, "How are you?" is *O-genki desu ka?* The first sound *o* is an honorific prefix. *Genki* means "energetic" or "healthy". *Desu* is a copula, the rough equivalent to the English verb "to be." And the *ka* is a particle that turns any sentence into an interrogative. So altogether, we have *O-genki desu ka?* The typical response is *Hai, okage sama de*. *Hai* means, "yes." The next phrase, *okage sama de* means, "thanks to you." So this sentence says I am fine and it thanks the person asking the question. Japanese people don't like to take credit for anything so they tend to thank others for their accomplishments or anything positive in their lives, including their health.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #5

Goodbye

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

KANJI

1. さようなら。
2. 失礼します。
3. 失礼致します。
4. お疲れ様でした。

KANA

1. さようなら。
2. しつれいします。
3. しつれいいたします。
4. おつかれさまでした。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sayōnara.
2. Shitsurei shimasu.
3. Shitsurei itashimasu.
4. Otsukaresama deshita.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Goodbye.
2. Excuse me.(polite form)
3. Excuse me. (more polite form)
4. Goodbye. (used among colleagues)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
さようなら	さようなら	sayōnara	Good bye.
バイバイ。	ばいばい。	Bai bai.	Bye bye! (casual form)
じゃあね	じゃあね	jā ne	Bye.
失礼します。	しつれいします。	Shitsurei shimasu.	Excuse me.
失礼致します。	しつれいいたします。	Shitsurei itashimasu.	Excuse me. (more polite form)
お疲れ様でした。	おつかれさまでした。	O-tsukare-sama deshita.	Goodbye (used among colleagues)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

さようなら、また、明日。 <i>Sayōnara, mata, ashita.</i> Good bye, see you tomorrow.	バイバイ、まきちゃん。 <i>Baibai, Maki-chan.</i> Bye bye, Maki!
じゃあね、また、明日。 <i>Jaa ne, mata, ashita.</i> See you tomorrow!	それでは、失礼します。 <i>Sore dewa shitsurei shimasu.</i> Excuse me, I'm leaving.

食事中に失礼いたします。
Shokujichū ni shitsurei itashimasu.

Excuse me for interrupting while you are eating.

お先に失礼します。お疲れ様でした。
O-saki ni shiturei shimasu. O-tsukare-sama deshita.

I'm leaving. Good bye!

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Sayōnara is another useful expression applicable to most occasions. *Sayōnara* literally means, "Goodbye." I know that outside Japan many pronounce it *sayoNARA*, but in Japanese, there is no strong intonation. We just pronounce it flatly. *Sayōnara* is fairly polite, so you can use it for most occasions.

The more casual way to say "Goodbye" is "Bye bye!" or *Ja-ne!*, but we use this only amongst close friends. It would be considered rude if you use it with someone significantly older than you. So be careful. The courtesy due to those who are older applies even if the person is only a few years older, and the relationship you have with a person also affects the levels of courtesy. For example, even when I get to know an older colleague enough to joke around with them, I would still use honorific forms or polite forms of language. I would never say *Ja-ne* or "Bye bye."

For business settings, neither *Sayōnara* nor "Bye bye" is acceptable. The best thing to say is *Shitsurei shimasu*, which we translate as "Please allow me to excuse myself." And when you say this, don't forget to bow! Even more formal is *Shitsurei ITashimasu*. For example, with colleagues, you would say *Shitsurei shimasu*. But to a company president or a corporate client, you would say *Shitsurei itashimasu*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Telephone Tips

Tip #1

Sachiko's Secret for today is about my favorite topic, talking on the telephone. We'll go over how to start and end a phone conversation. The first thing you say when picking up the phone is *moshi moshi*. This is short for the phrase *Mōshimasu mōshimasu*, which is a polite way of saying, "I am about to speak." So when you answer the phone, say *moshi moshi* or *hai*, which is "yes." After a nice conversation, you can use the phrases we learned today to wrap up.

Typically, you would confirm the next time you will see or talk to that person. You might say, "So I'll see you Sunday," then add *jā* or *dewa*, then say, "Goodbye" either in the polite form or casual form, depending on whom you're talking to. The casual way would be *Jā ne*. The polite way would be *Dewa, shitsurei shimasu*.

Tip #2

When colleagues part company, they often say *Otsukaresama deshita*, which roughly translated means, "It's been a long hard day." It's a way to acknowledge and congratulate the hard work that everyone has put in for the day. It's a nice little phrase that builds a sense of camaraderie amongst colleagues. But beware; you should use it only with colleagues, never with people from other companies or people you work for.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #6

Where's the Bathroom?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

6

KANJI

1. トイレはどこですか？

KANA

1. トイレはどこですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Toire wa doko desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Where is the bathroom?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
トイレはどこですか？	トイレはどこですか？	Toire wa doko desu ka?	Where is the bathroom?
トイレ	トイレ	toire	bathroom
どこ	どこ	doko	where
お手洗い	おてあらい	otearai	bathroom
女	おんな	onna	woman
男	おとこ	otoko	man

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>トイレを貸してください。</p> <p><i>Toire o kashite kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I use the bathroom?</p>	<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。</p> <p><i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>
<p>広いお手洗いですね。</p> <p><i>Hiroi otearai desu ne.</i></p> <p>The bathroom is large, isn't it.</p>	<p>あの人は男ですか、女ですか。</p> <p><i>Ano hito wa otoko desu ka, onna desu ka.</i></p> <p>Is that person a man or a woman?</p>
<p>マサミさんは男の人です。</p> <p><i>Masami-san wa otoko no hito desu.</i></p> <p>Masami is a man.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Where is the bathroom?" is *Toire wa doko desu ka?* Let's take a look at the components. The first word *to-i-re* means, "toilet." Next, the topic-marking particle *wa*. The third word, *doko*, which means, "where," is followed by *desu* meaning "is." And finally, *ka*, which turns a sentence into an interrogative.

In Japanese, we have another word to mean "toilet," *o-tearai*. This is a bit more polite. The first sound *o* is an honorific prefix. The next two syllables stand for "hand" and "wash." All together, the syllables mean, "toilet."

Now when you get to the bathroom, there may be one last obstacle. In some public places, the doors to the men's and women's toilets show only the Chinese characters for men and women. What to do, what to do? Well, you can stop by the website and find the characters for man and woman in the PDF. But if you're already in Tokyo, ask for help or click the center button of your iPod.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Guide to the Restroom in Japan

Tip #1

Now for Sachiko's Secret! In Japan, we use a variety of marks or signs to indicate bathrooms. The most common is simply the profile of a woman wearing a skirt or a man wearing a tuxedo. You know which is which, right? Another sign is the two English characters, WC. Historically, this meant, "Water Closet," but in Japan, some people call it "Washington Club!" Why? I have no idea. Another sign is the *kanji*, or Chinese character, for *otearai*. But be careful, some people have last names that are written with the same *kanji* as *otearai*, but pronounced *mitarai*. So if you get a business card from a "Mr. Mitarai" don't call him Mr. *Otearai*.

Tip #2

In Japan, it's not difficult to find a bathroom. Even if you're not in a restaurant or hotel, you can find decent bathrooms within department stores, shopping malls, and train stations. And the signs are often the international symbols, so you won't have much problem finding them. The problem is flushing them. You can flush many of them just by putting your hand near a sensor, but they don't always work. Persevere. A toilet in *Shinjuku Gyoen* park once took more than five minutes to sense my hand and flush itself.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #7

I Don't Understand.

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

#7

KANJI

1. すみません。
2. 分かりません。
3. 日本語は分かりません。

KANA

1. すみません。
2. わかりません。
3. にほんごはわかりません。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sumimasen.
2. Wakarimasen.
3. Nihongo wa wakarimasen.

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me.
2. I don't understand.

CONT'D OVER

3. I don't understand Japanese.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
すみません。	すみません。	Sumimasen.	Excuse me. I'm sorry.
分かりません。	わかりません。	Wakarimasen.	I don't understand.
日本語	にほんご	Nihon-go	Japanese
日本語は分かりません。	にほんごはわかりません。	Nihongo wa wakarimasen.	I don't understand Japanese.
スペイン語	すぺいんご	Supein-go	Spanish

SAMPLE SENTENCES

すみません、ゆっくりお願いします。 <i>Sumimasen, Yukkuri onegai shimasu.</i> Excuse me, could you say that slowly please?	この日本語がわかりません。 <i>Kono nihongo wa wakarimasen.</i> I don't understand what this Japanese means.
日本語を話します。 <i>Nihongo wo hanashimasu.</i> I speak Japanese.	スペイン語のガイドありますか。 <i>Supein-go no gaido arimasu ka.</i> Do you have a Spanish information guide?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Excuse me" is *Sumimasen*. You can use this phrase to apologize, to get someone's attention, or both. You can simultaneously apologize for the fact you don't understand and interrupt the person who might still be talking.

The phrase "I don't understand" is *Wakarimasen*. Putting the two together, you say,

Sumimasen. Wakarimasen. The dictionary form of the verb "to understand" or "to know" is *wakaru*. *Wakarimasen* is the polite way of expressing the negative. So *wakarimasen* means, "don't understand." In Japanese, you don't always have to specify the subject of the sentence. In this case, if you say *Wakarimasen*, it's obvious that you don't understand, so you don't need to identify the subject.

Let's build on this and say, "I don't understand Japanese." That would be *Nihongo wa wakarimasen*. The first word *Nihongo* means, "Japanese language." Typically, to say the name of a language, you say the country name - "Japan" is *nihon* - and add the syllable *go*, which stands for "language." Together it's *Nihongo*. The Spanish language would be *Supeingo*.



CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: Most Japanese Understand English

Tip #1

Today, Sachiko reveals a truth about Japanese people you'll be relieved to hear. Most Japanese adults - unless they're over seventy and were forbidden to study English in school during World War II - have had three to ten years of English language education. (Three years in junior high, three years in senior high, and four years in college for some.) At the least, most Japanese can understand written English. It may be difficult for them to understand your

speech and answer you, but if you write a message in English, they can usually make sense of it.

If you are lost and cannot make yourself understood, just write "Where is Shibuya station?" on a scrap of paper and show it to people. Usually, they'll be able to point you in the right direction. Adults (particularly in metropolitan areas) are quite likely to read English well enough to help you.

Tip #2

Try talking to children, too. Some children speak English well because many young parents send their children to private English conversation schools in an effort to make them bilingual. In upcoming lessons, you will learn how to say, "Can you speak English?" and "Can you say it again?"

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #8

Can You Speak English?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

8

KANJI

1. 英語を話せますか？
2. スペイン語を話せますか？
3. フランス語を話せますか？

KANA

1. えいごをはなせますか？
2. すぺいんごをはなせますか？
3. ふらんすごをはなせますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Eigo o hanasemasu ka?
2. Supein-go o hanasemasu ka?
3. Furansu-go o hanasemasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Can you speak English?
2. Can you speak Spanish?

CONT'D OVER

3. Can you speak French?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
英語	えいご	Eigo	English
話せます	はなせます	hanasemasu	can speak (polite form)
スペイン語	すぺいんご	Supein-go	Spanish
フランス語	ふらんすご	Furansu-go	French

SAMPLE SENTENCES

英語がわかりますか。 <i>Eigo ga wakarimasu ka.</i> Do you understand English?	英語を話せますか。 <i>Eigo o hanasemasu ka.</i> Can you speak English?
スペイン語のガイドありますか。 <i>Supein-go no gaido arimasu ka.</i> Do you have a Spanish information guide?	彼はフランス語を話す。 <i>Kare wa Furansu-go o hanasu.</i> He speaks French.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Can you speak English?" is *Eigo o hanasemasu ka*? The first word *eigo* means, "English." Following that, is the object-marking particle *o*. *Hanasemasu* is the polite way of saying "can speak." And the last syllable, the particle *ka*, turns the sentence into an interrogative. Japanese requires no subject in some sentences, so *hanasemasu* only means, "can speak," not "can you speak." We translate it as "can you speak," because the person you're talking to is the implied subject.

Now let's try a different language. How about Spanish? The Japanese word for Spanish is *Supein-go*. *Supein* is the Japanese pronunciation of the word "Spain." Usually, the name of the language is the country name (in this case Spain) followed by the word *go* which means, "language." So "Can you speak Spanish?" is *Supein-go o hanasemasu ka?* Let's try another language. How about French? The country name is France. So, start with *Furansu* (the Japanese pronunciation of the word "France") plus *go*, for "language." So, "Can you speak French?" would be *Furansu-go o hanasemasu ka?* Easy, right?

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: American and British English

Tip #1

Sachiko's Secret. Today's secret is the origin of the word *eigo*, which means, "English." As I said earlier, typically a country name precedes *go* to name the language spoken in that country. But in the case of *eigo*, there is no country named, *ei*. Then how did the word come about? Well, *eigo* is short for *eikokugo*. *Eikoku* means the "United Kingdom." A long time ago, Japanese people learned two types of English - British English and American English. British English was called *eigo*, an abbreviation of the word *eikokugo*. American English was called *beigo*, because *Beikoku* in Japanese refers to the United States. My parent's generation learned different dialects of *eigo* and *beigo*. In *eigo* class, they learned to say, "Have you a pen?" while in *beigo* class, they learned to say, "Do you have a pen?"

Tip

A very informal way of saying, "Can you speak English?" is *Eigo okay?* or "English okay?" Most people in Japan will understand the word "English," and they'll see that you're a foreigner so this should be no problem. But it would be much more polite and impressive if you said *Eigo o hanasemasu ka?* So give it a try.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #9

Can You Say It Again?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

9

KANJI

1. もう一度言って下さい。
2. ゆっくり話して下さい。

KANA

1. もういちどいってください。
2. ゆっくりはなしてください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Mō ichido itte kudasai.
2. Yukkuri hanashite kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. Can you say it again?
2. Please speak slowly.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
もう	もう	mō	already, soon, again, more

一度	いちど	ichido	once, one time
言う	いう	iu	to speak, to say
下さい	ください	kudasai	please
ゆっくり	ゆっくり	yukkuri	slowly
話す	はなす	hanasu	to speak, to talk; V1

SAMPLE SENTENCES

もう、それは終わりましたよ。 <i>Mō, sore wa owarimashita yo.</i> That was already finished.	え？もう一度お願いします。 <i>E? Mō ichi-do onegai shimasu.</i> What? Could you say that again?
何も言わないで下さい。 <i>Nani mo iwanaide kudasai.</i> Please don't say anything.	水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i> Can I have some water, please?
ゆっくり話して下さい。 <i>Yukkuri hanashite kudasai.</i> Please speak slowly.	彼は英語と日本語を話します。 <i>Kare wa Ei-go to Nihon-go o hanashimasu.</i> He speaks English and Japanese.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Can You Say It Again?" is *Mō ichido itte kudasai*. The first phrase, *mō ichido* means, "once again." This is followed by *itte*, which is the conjugated form of *iu* meaning, "to say." The last word, *kudasai*, means, "please." So all together, it's *Mō ichido itte kudasai*. Literally, this means, "Again, say, please."

Now if someone repeats the same sentence for you but at lightning speed, you may want to ask that person to slow down. But you want to ask politely. In Japanese, "Speak slowly please" is *Yutkuri hanashite kudasai*. The first word, *Yutkuri*, means, "slowly." This is followed by *hanashite*, which is the conjugated form of the root verb *hanasu*, which means, "to speak." The last word is the now familiar *kudasai*, meaning, "please." So all

together, we have *Yutkuri hanashite kudasai*. Literally, this means, "Slowly, speak, please." or "Please speak slowly."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: The Short Forms of "Can You Say It Again?"

Tip #1

Today, Sachiko gives you quicker, informal variations of today's phrases. Now, it's much more polite to say the entire sentence. But if it's a bit too long to remember, you can use just the first half of the sentence. You may say, *Mō Ichido*, which is just, "once again" and *Yutkuri*, which is "slowly." Because these phrases by themselves could sound abrupt and might come off as rude, you should bow your head a little as you say them. That's a gesture of respect in Japan. Or perhaps even add the English word "please" at the end as in "*Mō ichido*, please" or "*Yutkuri*, please." Japanese people know the English word "please" so they'll know that you're trying your best to be polite.

Tip#2

When you ask someone to repeat a sentence for you, be sure to express your gratitude. You can do that by bowing and saying, *Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu*, which is a very polite way of saying, "Thank you."

And if you still can't catch what the person is saying, you can always ask them to write down the message. We'll cover how to ask that question in another lesson.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #10

I'm Sorry

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

10

KANJI

1. すみません。
2. ごめんなさい。
3. いいえ、いいえ。
4. 失礼いたしました。

KANA

1. すみません。
2. ごめんなさい。
3. いいえ、いいえ。
4. しつれいいいたしました。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sumimasen.
2. Gomennasai.
3. Iie iie.
4. Shitsurei itashimashita.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Excuse me.
2. Sorry.
3. No, no don't worry.
4. Excuse me. (polite form)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
すみません	すみません	sumimasen	Sorry, excuse me
ごめんなさい	ごめんなさい	gomen nasai	I'm sorry.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

すみません。質問があります。 <i>Sumimasen. Shitsumon ga arimasu.</i> Excuse me. I have a question.	遅くなってごめんなさい。 <i>Osoku natte gomen nasai.</i> I'm sorry I'm late.
--	--

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We'll start with *Sumimasen*. Literally, this means "Excuse me." You can also say *gomen nasai*, which is a bit more casual way of saying "I'm sorry." We can use both phrases in situations such as accidentally stepping on someone's shoes. You probably don't step on someone's shoes often, but it happens every day in the crowded trains in Tokyo, Yokohama, Osaka, and other major cities.

Considering how crowded the trains are at certain times of the day, someone will probably step on your shoes and apologize to you. Don't take offense; it's really difficult

to avoid stepping on people or pushing people when you're on a train during rush hour.

What do you say when someone apologizes to you? Well, when someone says *Sumimasen* to you, you have two choices: You can simply nod to acknowledge the person's apology or you can say *lie iie*, which means, "No, no, that's fine," or "Don't worry about it." Speaking the words rather than nodding will leave a better impression and restore harmony.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

A Hundred Ways to Say I'm Sorry

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. You can also use *Sumimasen* to simply catch someone's attention. For example, you can use it to call the waiter at a restaurant or a sales clerk at a store. Typically, we would say this in a soft tone so as not to sound like we're demanding attention. We use it as a polite way of conveying the message, "Um, I was wondering if I can get someone here." And raising your hand slightly will help the waiter or sales clerk find you in the crowd of people. People in America do something similar. When the waiter walks by, you often say, "Excuse me." to get his attention.

Tip #2

A most polite way of saying, "Excuse me" is *Shitsurei itashimashita*. This is appropriate for business settings or speaking to a person significantly older than you. You can also use it for more serious mistakes such as arriving late to an appointment, accidentally bumping into a person, or spilling coffee on someone.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #11

Business Greetings - Welcome!

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

11

KANJI

1. いらっしゃいませ。
2. いらっしゃい。
3. ありがとうございます。

KANA

1. いらっしゃいませ。
2. いらっしゃい。
3. ありがとうございます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Irasshaimase.
2. Irasshai.
3. Arigatō gozaimashita.

ENGLISH

1. Welcome to our store.
2. Welcome. (shorter, casual form)

CONT'D OVER

3. Thank you very much (for having shopped here.)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
いらっしゃいませ。	いらっしゃいませ。	Irasshaimase.	Hello. Welcome. May I help you?
ありがとう ございました。	ありがとう ございました。	Arigatō gozaimashita.	Thank you.
いらっしゃい。	いらっしゃい。	Irasshai.	Hello. Welcome. Come on in.

SAMPLE SENTENCES

いらっしゃいませ。ご注文は何になさいますか。 <i>Irasshaimase. Go-chūmon wa nani ni nasaimasu ka.</i> May I help you? What would you like to order?	本日はご来店ありがとうございます。 <i>Honjitsu wa go-raiten arigatō gozaimashita.</i> Thank you for visiting us today.(at shop)
こんばんは。いらっしゃいませ。 <i>Konbanwa. Irasshaimase.</i> Good evening. May I help you?	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

いらっしゃいませ (*irasshaimase*) is a very common phrase used in greeting customers in stores or restaurants. **いらっしゃい**(*irasshai*) in **いらっしゃいませ** (*irasshaimase*) is the stem of *masu*-form of **いらっしゃる** (*irassharu*), which means "to come" (来る, *kuru*) in the

honorific form. And *ませ*(*mase*) is attached to the end of imperative sentences or greetings to say it in a polite way or with respect.

In most cases, the store clerks say this as you walk into the establishment. The employees will say it in unison. I like it because the attention makes me feel like a queen. Now, what should you do in response? You could simply nod and smile to acknowledge their attention. That would be nice. But most Japanese - either because they're shy or desensitized to this custom - will simply continue walking without acknowledging the greeting.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Entering and Leaving Shops and Restaurants

Tip #1

When you leave an establishment, the store clerks will say, *Arigatō gozaimashita*, which means "Thank you very much." in the past tense. So it means, "Thank you for having shopped here." They may also add long sentences effectively meaning, "Please come again," or "We look forward to seeing you again." One thing they won't say is, "Have a nice day." It's just not the Japanese custom to say that to customers.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #12

Restaurant 1

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

12

KANJI

1. いらっしゃいませ。
2. 何名様ですか？

KANA

1. いらっしゃいませ。
2. なんめいさまでですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Irasshaimase.
2. Nan-mei sama desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Welcome.
2. How many people in your party?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
何	なに	nani	what

様	さま	sama	(pol) Mr or Mrs
二	に	ni	two
名	めい	mei	people

SAMPLE SENTENCES

何名様ですか。 <i>Nan mei-sama desu ka.</i> How many people in your party?	お客様、ご注文は？ <i>O-kyaku-sama, go-chūmon wa?</i> Are you ready to order, sir/ma'am?
これを二個ください。 <i>Kore o ni-ko kudasai.</i> Two of these, please.	大人二名、子供一名。 <i>Otona ni-mei, kodomo ichi-mei.</i> Two adults and one child.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

When you first walk into a restaurant, most likely you'll hear, *Irasshaimase*, which in Japanese is the polite greeting you hear when customers enter a place of business.

Then they will ask you, "How many people in your party?" which in Japanese is *Nanmei sama desu ka?* *Nan* is one way of saying "What." In this case, it means, "How many" because it's followed by a people counter *mei*. *Sama* is an honorific word we use after *mei*. *Desu* is a copula roughly meaning, "to be." And *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. Altogether, *Nanmei sama desu ka?* literally means, "How many people is?" or in this context, "How many people are in your party?"

To answer this question, simply say the number of people in your group, followed by *mei*. For example, you would say, *ni mei* to mean, "two people." Remember, the word *sama* is an honorific form, so you should never use it when referring to yourself or your party. I would never call myself *Sachiko-san*, or Ms. Sachiko. To say "four people" you say, *yon mei*. Now these aren't full sentences, but they will suffice when answering the question, *Nanmei sama desu ka?*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. When I'm short on time or the restaurant is noisy, when I enter, I simply hold up my fingers to indicate how many people in my party. This helps avoid confusion. Even if you are fluent in Japanese, it's sometimes so loud in the restaurant the wait staff can't hear you. If you hold up your fingers, the wait staff can easily see how many places you need. Sometimes they won't come to the door to greet you. They will just smile and point to the seat(s) you can take. This saves time when I'm on a short lunch break.

Tip #2

Here's a tip on how to avoid crowded restaurants. If you're in a busy business district, there will be long lines for lunch and dinner. Noon to 1:30 PM is the typical lunchtime for Japanese corporate employees, and 7 PM to 9 PM is the common dinnertime. So try to avoid those hours. If you must, go in small groups. If you're in a party of four or more, you will most likely wait for a while until enough seats open up. Generally, if your group is four or more, you should try to get reservations. As for closing time, many restaurants stop taking food orders at around 9:30 PM or 10 PM so you should get in before that.

We'll go over the numbers 1 to 10 in an upcoming lesson, but in case you need it urgently, here they are: *ichi, ni, san, yon (shi), go, roku, nana (shichi), hachi, kyu, juu*. Be sure to check our lesson on the numbers 1 to 10 to get the pronunciation and intonation right.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #13

Restaurant 2

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

13

KANJI

1. 禁煙、喫煙、どちらにしますか？
2. いいですか？

KANA

1. きんえん、きつえん、どちらにしますか？
2. いいですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Kin'en, kitsuen, dochira ni shimasu ka?
2. Ii desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Which do you prefer, smoking or non-smoking?
2. May I? Is this alright?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
禁煙	きんえん	kin'en	non-smoking

喫煙	きつえん	kitsu'en	smoking
どちら	どちら	dochira	which

SAMPLE SENTENCES

ここは禁煙です。 <i>Koko wa kin'en desu.</i> This place is no-smoking.	喫煙席に座りたくないです。 <i>Kitsuenseki ni suwaritakunai desu.</i> I don't want to sit in the smoking section.
ライスとパン、どちらがいいですか。 <i>Raisu to pan, dochira ga ii desu ka.</i> Would you like rice or bread?	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

As you remember from Lesson 12, when you enter a restaurant in Japan, you'll hear *Irasshaimase*, which is the polite greeting we use to welcome customers into a place of business. Then they'll ask you how many people are in your party. We covered that much in our previous lesson. Today, we'll discuss the next question that comes up; do you want to sit in the smoking or non-smoking section?

"Non-smoking" in Japanese is *kin'en*. The first character, *kin*, stands for "prohibited." This is followed by *en*, which is the character for "smoke." The Japanese word for "smoking" is *kitsu'en*.

When the wait staff asks you if you want smoking or non-smoking seats, they will most likely ask, *Kin'en, kitsuen, dochira ni shimasu ka?* This means, "Non-smoking, smoking, which would you do?" *Dochira* means, "which." *Ni shimasu ka* means "will you do?" *Shimasu* is the polite form of the verb *suru* meaning, "to do." *Ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative.

So the wait staff will ask you, *Kin'en, kitsuen, dochira ni shimasu ka?* To answer this, simply say, either *ki'en* ("non-smoking") or *kitsu'en* ("smoking"). Pretty easy, yes?

You can also anticipate the question by saying how many people are in your party and ask

for non-smoking seats at the same time. As we covered in our previous lesson, you can tell them the number of people in your party by saying, *ni-me* for "two people" or *yon-me* for "four people." Then add *kin'en* and you're all set. You are ready for an exquisite dining experience in the heart of Tokyo.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: Smoking in Japan

Tip #1

Now here's a little Sachiko's Secret. Many restaurants in Japan have separate seating for smoking and non-smoking, but the two areas are so close together that smoke often drifts into the non-smoking area. The table right next to you may be part of the smoking section so you could end up smelling smoke all through dinner. When you enter a restaurant, pay attention to the layout of the place. Ask for seats farther away from the smoking section. If the smoke starts to bother you during a meal, insist on moving to a different seat. Simply point to an empty seat further away from the smoking section and say, *ii desu ka?* This means, "Is it alright?" If the wait staff looks confused as to why you're asking to move, simply pantomime smoking and frown. That's what I do.

Tip #2

During your trip to Japan, you may see small glass houses standing in the middle of public places. They will have no furniture, just people inside standing around, smoking. What are these houses? They are public facilities specifically built for smokers. It's the strangest thing! During weekday afternoons, they're often filled with men and women in dark business suits, all looking tired and grim. They'll just stand there, gathered around the ashtray in the middle of the house, not really speaking to one another. Each one spends about five to ten minutes inside. They're really strange. I'm sure there are more glass houses, but the one I found was on the main street of Roppongi. Check them out if you get the chance.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #14

Restaurant 3

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

14

KANJI

1. すみません。
2. これ下さい。
3. 何がお勧めですか？
4. ご注文は？
5. お飲み物から。

KANA

1. すみません。
2. これください。
3. なにが おすすめですか？
4. ごちゅうもんは？
5. おのみものから。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sumimasen.
2. Kore kudasai.
3. Nani ga o-susume desu ka.

CONT'D OVER

4. Go-chūmon wa?
5. O-nomimono kara.

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me.
2. Please give me this.
3. What do you recommend?
4. What are you ordering?
5. Start with your drink order, please.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
これ	これ	kore	this	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
何	なに	nani	what	interrogative word
お勧め	おすすめ	o-susume	recommendation	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>	<p>水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have some water, please?</p>
<p>なにが好きですか。 <i>Nani ga suki desu ka.</i></p> <p>What do you like?</p>	<p>何を飲みますか。 <i>Nani o nomimasu ka.</i></p> <p>What would you like to drink?</p>
<p>おすすめは何ですか。 <i>O-susume wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What do you recommend?</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

When you enter a restaurant, you might need to get the attention of the wait staff. You can accomplish this by waving your hand and saying, *Sumimasen*, which means "Excuse me."

Once the waiter or waitress comes to your table, you can simply point to the menu and say, "This please," which is *Kore kudasai* in Japanese, or you can point to the numbers or pictures on the menu. You can also replace the word *kore* with the name of whatever it is you want to eat. For example, to order tempura (deep-fried vegetables, meat, fish, etc), you say *Tempura kudasai*.

Now if you're feeling adventurous, you could ask, "What do you recommend?" *Nani ga osusume desu ka?* If you want more than one order of a dish, just say the number of orders you want using the words we covered in previous lessons. You could also raise your fingers to indicate how many orders. (As a reminder, the numbers 1 to 10 are *ichi, ni, san, yon (shi), go, roku, shichi (nana), hachi, kyū, jū*.)

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Ordering Food and Drinks in Japan

Tip #1

And now for Sachiko's Secret. Japanese restaurants make life easy for their customers; the menus often have pictures of the dishes. You can really get a feel for what's available even if you can't read the menu. Sometimes, they even have life-sized, plastic replicas of the meals displayed in a glass case outside the restaurant. Have you seen those in guidebooks? They're very useful, not to mention cute. But you should know the portions are much smaller than they appear in the pictures or displays. You might want to order more dishes than you would in the US.

Tip #2

Let's discuss the questions that waiters may ask you. If they want to get your drink order first, they'll say, *O-nomimono kara*, which means, "Starting with your drink orders." The first sound, *o* is an honorific prefix attached to the word *nomimono*, which means "drinks." The honorific form is added because the drink is for the customer who should be respected. The next word, *kara*, simply means "from." Together, *Onomimono kara* means "Starting from your drinks, Sir."

The next question might be *Go-chūmon wa?* This means, "What is your order?" Here, the honorific prefix *Go* is added to the following word *chūmon*, which means "order." Honorific prefixes are typically either *o* or *go* depending on the word that follows. The last sound, *wa*, simply means "is." Altogether, the phrase means, "Your order is?"

Now, if you're feeling ambitious, and you want to pronounce the names of the things you're ordering, the easiest thing to order may be drinks. That's because most of the Japanese words we use to describe drinks are simply the English words pronounced in a Japanese way.

For example, "beer" is *bīru*. "Milk" is *miruku*. "Coffee" is *kōhī*. We don't have the "f" sound in Japanese, so we replace it with the "h" sound. There are exceptions though, such as the word for "Coke." In Japanese, we say "Coca cola." People in Japan would not understand the word "Coke," because we don't use it at all. And for "English tea" we say *kōcha*. It's important to know the word *mizu*, which means, "water," because you don't want to become dehydrated during your vacation.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #15

Restaurant 4

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

15

KANJI

1. すみません。
2. 会計お願いします。
3. お願いします
4. ご馳走様でした。
5. 頂きます。

KANA

1. すみません。
2. かいけい おねがいします。
3. おねがいします
4. ごちそうさまでした。
5. いただきます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sumimasen.
2. Kaikei o-negai shimasu.
3. Onegai shimasu.

CONT'D OVER

4. Gochisōsama deshita.
5. Itadakimasu.

ENGLISH

1. Excuse me.
2. Check please.
3. Please take care of it.
4. Thank you for the wonderful meal.
5. I am about to have this wonderful meal.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
会計	かいけい	kaikei	bill, check	
おいしい	おいしい	oishii	delicious	i-adjective, adjecti
一括	いっかつ	ikkatsu	lump sum	
別々	べつべつ	betsu-betsu	separately	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>お会計お願いします。 <i>O-kaikei o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Check, please.</p>	<p>イギリスのクッキーはおいしい。 <i>Igirisu no kukkī wa oishii.</i></p> <p>British cookies are delicious.</p>
<p>一括でよろしいですか。 <i>Ikkatsu de yoroshī desu ka.</i></p> <p>Are you paying in a lump sum?</p>	<p>別々でお願いします。 <i>Betsubetsu de o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Separate checks, please.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

When you finish your meal at a restaurant and it's time to pay the bill, you must first get the attention of the staff. You already know you can accomplish this by saying, *Sumimasen*, which means, "Excuse me."

Once the wait staff is at your table, you can ask for the check. In Japanese, "May we have the check, please" is *Kaikei o-negai shimasu*. The first word *kaikei* means, "the check." This is followed by *O-negai shimasu*, which means, "Please take care of it." The wait staff will return to your table with a check. You should take the check to the cash register (usually by the entrance) and pay as you leave the restaurant.

Now if you'd like to tell the wait staff or your companion how good the food is, you can say *oishii*, which means "delicious." That word is in the present tense so you would use it while you're still eating. After the meal, say *oishikatta*, which is in the past tense meaning, "It was delicious."

There is also a ritual phrase to say after finishing a meal, which is *Gochisōsama deshita*. This roughly means, "Thank you for the wonderful food." You usually say this to the person who cooked the food, the person who took you to the restaurant, or the person who paid for your meal. You can say that to the wait staff, too. I'm sure they'll be delighted to hear this from you.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Satchiko's Secret: Courtesy and Paying the Bill in Restaurants

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. As I said earlier, when you pay at the restaurant, take your check to the cash register, typically near the entrance of the restaurant. When you do, a staff member will ask if your party would like to pay individually or pay as a group. He will usually ask *ikkatsu de yoroshii desu ka?* This means, "Paying in a lump sum?" *ikkatsu* means, "lump sum." *Yoroshii desuka* means, "Is it okay?"

To pay as a group, you say *ikkatsu*, or just pay the full amount. If you want to pay separately, you say *betsu betsu*, which means "separately." Then tell the staff member who ordered what. He will calculate a separate bill for each person. Good news! There is no tipping in Japan, so don't leave a tip at the table.

Tip #2

There is also a ritual phrase to say before eating a meal. It's *itadakimasu*, and it roughly translates as, "I am about to have this wonderful meal." Again, it should be said to the person who cooked the meal or to the person who took you to the restaurant. At home, you should say it to your mother. At the restaurant, you should say it to the person who invited you. But we also say it routinely to no one in particular. Just as in the US, wait until everyone in your group is served before beginning to eat. And if the others tell you to go ahead and start your meal before it gets cold, you may dig in.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #16

Counting 1 to 10

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

16

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
一	いち	ichi	one
杯	はい	hai	counter for spoons, cups or glasses
枚	まい	mai	counter for flat objects
名	めい	mei	people
十	じゅう	jū	ten
九	きゅう	kyū, ku	nine
八	はち	hachi	eight
七	しち、なな	shichi, nana	seven
六	ろく	roku	six
五	ご	go	five
四	し、よん	shi, yon	four
三	さん	san	three
二	に	ni	two
個	こ	ko	counter for small objects

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>お茶を一杯ください。 <i>O-cha wo ippai kudasai.</i></p> <p>One cup of tea, please.</p>	<p>毎朝、水を一杯飲みます。 <i>Maiasa, mizu o i-ppai nomimasu.</i></p> <p>I drink a glass of water everyday.</p>
<p>大人のチケット一枚ください。 <i>Otona no chiketto ichi-mai kudasai.</i></p> <p>One adult ticket, please.</p>	<p>大人二名、子供一名。 <i>Otona ni-mei, kodomo ichi-mei.</i></p> <p>Two adults and one child.</p>

<p>A. 「何名様ですか。」 B. 「十人です。」 <i>A.Nan-mei-sama desu ka. B.Jū-nin desu.</i></p> <p>A: How many people are in your party? B: Ten people.</p>	<p>ビスケットを九個買います。 <i>Bisuketto o kyū-ko kaimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll buy nine biscuits.</p>
<p>八本のボールペンがテーブルの上にあります。 <i>Hachihon(happon) no bōrupen ga tēburu no ue ni arimasu.</i></p> <p>There are eight pens on the table.</p>	<p>ビール七杯と、酒八杯を下さい。 <i>Biru nanahai to, sake happai wo kudasai.</i></p> <p>Seven glasses of beer and eight glasses of sake, please.</p>
<p>お酒を六杯お願いします。 <i>O-sake wo roppai o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Six glasses of sake, please.</p>	<p>五名様ですか。 <i>Go-mei-sama desu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have five people in your party?</p>
<p>切符を四枚ください。 <i>Kippu o yon-mai kudasai.</i></p> <p>Four tickets, please.</p>	<p>コーヒーを三杯ください。 <i>Kōhī wo san bai kudasai.</i></p> <p>Three cups of coffee, please.</p>
<p>これを二個ください。 <i>Kore o ni-ko kudasai.</i></p> <p>Two of these, please.</p>	<p>これを二個ください。 <i>Kore o ni-ko kudasai.</i></p> <p>Two of these, please.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

There are many sets of numbers in Japanese, but we'll go over the most common and modern set. Please note there are two ways to say "four" and "seven" in this set alone.

Here we go!

"One" is *ichi*, "two" is *ni*, "three" is *san*, "four" is *shi* or *yon*, "five" is *go*, "six" is *roku*, "seven" is *nana* or *shichi*, "eight" is *hachi*, "nine" is *kyū*, and "ten" is *jū*. "Zero" is simply *zero* but pronounced in a slightly Japanese way ("zeh-roh").

To practice these numbers, try saying your phone number in Japanese!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Another Way to Say Numbers in Japanese?

Tip #1

Now for Sachiko's Secret. As I mentioned before, there are several different ways of saying numbers in Japanese: some are old traditional words and some are modern. (The ones we introduced today are the modern ones.) The elderly population in rural Japan, for example, might still use *hi fu mi* for "one, two and three."

So if you hear another set of numbers, just repeat the numbers you know to let the other person know that you're familiar with a different set of numbers. And if all else fails, just hold up your fingers! Numbers are universal!

Tip #2

When using numbers in Japanese, we often put a counter after each number. For example, for paper items like tickets, we put the counter *mai* after the number. *ichi mai* means "one ticket" or "one piece of paper." To count people, we add *mei* among other options. So "two people" would be *ni mei*, and "four people" would be *yon mei*. Remember these phrases because they'll come up frequently when buying tickets or ordering at a restaurant.

Let's introduce some other counters. For a cup, glass, bowl, or any container we use for drinks and liquids, we use the counter *hai*. Depending on the number that we couple this with, the pronunciation changes slightly. For example, "one cup" is *ippai*, "two cups" is *nihai*, and "three cups" is *sanbai*. So if you want to order "two glasses of sake," you would say *Sake ni hai kudasai*. ("Please give me two glasses of sake.")

Lastly, the most common counter for objects in general is *ko*. Again, the pronunciation changes slightly depending on the number. "One piece" is *ikko*, "two pieces" is *niko*, and "three pieces" is *sanko*.

There is another set of numbers that is similar to *ikko*, *niko*, *sanko* and mean "one piece." That set would sound like this: *hitotsu*, *futatsu*, *mittsu*. We won't go through all of them here, but just know that there are various ways of saying numbers in Japanese.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #17

How much?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

17

KANJI

1. いくらですか？
2. これはいくらですか？
3. それはいくらですか？
4. 安いですね。
5. 高いですね。

KANA

1. いくらですか？
2. これはいくらですか？
3. それはいくらですか？
4. やすいですね。
5. たかいですね。

ROMANIZATION

1. Ikura desu ka?
2. Kore wa ikura desu ka?
3. Sore wa ikura desu ka?

CONT'D OVER

4. Yasui desu ne.
5. Takai desu ne.

ENGLISH

1. How much?
2. How much is this?
3. How much is that?
4. It's cheap, isn't it?
5. It's expensive, isn't it?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
これ	これ	kore	this
いくら	いくら	ikura	how much
それ	それ	sore	that
安い	やすい	yasui	cheap;Adj (i)
高い	たかい	takai	high, tall, expensive;Adj(i)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>	<p>おつりはいくらですか。 <i>Otsuri wa ikura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much is the change?</p>
<p>A「どれにしますか」 B「それください」 <i>A:Dore ni shimasu ka. B:Sore kudasai.</i></p> <p>A: What would you like? B: I'll take that.</p>	<p>豚肉は安いです。 <i>Butaniku wa yasui desu.</i></p> <p>Pork is cheap.</p>
<p>ダイヤモンドは高いです。 <i>Daiyamondo wa takai desu.</i></p> <p>Diamonds are expensive.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "How much?" is *Ikura desu ka?* The most rudimentary way of using *Ikura desu ka?* is pointing at something while saying it. But let's try and build this up a bit, shall we?

Let's start with the expression, "How much is this?" In Japanese, this is *Kore wa ikura desu ka?* The first word, *kore*, means "this." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. And the last segment, *Ikura desu ka?* means, "how much?" When pointing at something a bit farther away from you, you can say *Sore wa ikura desu ka?* This means, "How much is that?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret for Getting the Right Price in Japanese Stores!

Tip #1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret! There's a quick and dirty way of asking "How much," and it's simply *Ikura?* But beware!! If you get the intonation wrong, you could be asking for salmon eggs instead!!! The word *ikura*, without an intonation, means salmon eggs! To ask "how much," you should raise the intonation at the end of the sentence. Be careful! You don't

want to end up with salmon eggs when you're trying to buy Chanel!

Tip #2

To understand the response to "How much is this?" be sure to check out Lesson 16 to learn numbers one to ten, and Lesson 19 on the currency as well as numbers 100 to 10,000. In our next lesson, we'll go over how to bargain with sales clerks!

If you want to comment on the price, you can say *Yasui desu ne* to mean, "It's cheap, isn't it?" and *Takai desu ne* to mean, "It's expensive, isn't it?" *Yasui* means "cheap," and *takai* means "expensive." *Desu* is a polite way of saying "to be," and the last word *ne* is added in spoken Japanese to simply mean, "isn't it?"

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #18

Please Lower the Price

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

18

KANJI

1. まけて下さい。
2. あっちのお店では5000円。

KANA

1. まけてください。
2. あっちのおみせでは5000円。

ROMANIZATION

1. Makete kudasai.
2. Acchi no o-mise de wa 5000-en.

ENGLISH

1. Please lower the price.
2. At the other store, (they offered) 5000 yen.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
まける	まける	makeru	to give a discount

下さい	ください	kudasai	please
もっと	もっと	motto	more
お店	おみせ	o-mise	shop, store
あっちの	あっちの	atchi no	the one over there
円	えん	en	yen

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>このアイポッド、もっとまけてください。 <i>Kono aipoddo, motto makete kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please give more discount on an ipod!</p>	<p>水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have some water, please?</p>
<p>もっと食べてください。 <i>Motto tabete kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please have some more.</p>	<p>あのお店は安い。 <i>Ano o-mise wa yasui.</i></p> <p>That store is cheap.</p>
<p>あっちのお店は高い。 <i>Atchi no o-mise wa takai.</i></p> <p>That store over there is expensive.</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>1-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much yen is it to one dollar?</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Today's phrase is related to the phrase, "How much?" We learned in the last lesson that in Japanese, this is *Ikura desu ka?* We also introduced "How much is this?" (*Kore wa ikura desu ka?*), and "How much is that?" (*Sore wa ikura desu ka?*).

If you're not happy with the price they offer and you want to ask for a discount, you can ask the phrase "Please lower the price." In Japanese, that's *Makete kudasai*. The first word, *makete*, is a conjugation of the word *makeru*, which means, "to give a discount." *Kudasai* means "please." Together, *Makete kudasai* means, "Please give me a discount." To say "more," as in "give me a bigger discount," you can say *motto*. If you're okay with the suggested price, simply say "Okay" or "Good." Most Japanese people will understand

these simple English phrases.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret for Buying and Bargaining in Osaka

Tip #1

Now for Sachiko's Secret. In my hometown of Osaka, there is a lot of bargaining. Because the city is historically a town of merchants, people love to bargain. And there is a distinct, rhythmical way of saying "Please lower the price" in the Osaka dialect or *Osaka-ben*, as it is called in Japanese. The *Osaka-ben* for "Please lower the price" is *Makete kuren ka?* As you may have noticed, *Osaka-ben* usually sounds very rhythmical and kind of warm!

Tip #2

Some other appropriate places for negotiating prices would be electronics stores. Most store employees expect people to ask for a discount anyway, so don't ever settle for the first price they give you. Suggest figures that you think are a bit too big of a discount, and they will choose a middle ground. Sometimes I even lie, saying "Well, the other store just offered me this price, so if you can't beat it...." This works every time! In Japanese, you would say *Atchi no o-mise dewa...en*. Insert the price on the dotted line. *Atchi no o-mise* means "the other store." *Dewa* is like saying, "at." The last *en* means the Japanese currency, "Yen."

This is simplified, slightly broken down Japanese for beginners. There is a more sophisticated way of saying this, but we won't get into it at SurvivalPhrases.com.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #19

Currency, Counting 100-10,000

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 2 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

19

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
円	えん	en	yen
百	ひゃく	hyaku	hundred
千	せん	sen	thousand
万	まん	man	ten thousand
ご縁	ごえん	goen	destiny
五円	ごえん	go en	5 yen

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>1-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much yen is it to one dollar?</p>	<p>百円を道で拾いました。 <i>Hyaku-en wo michi de hiroimashita.</i></p> <p>I picked up a 100 yen coin off the street.</p>
<p>千円のスイカを下さい。 <i>Sen-en no suika wo kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have a one thousand yen Suica card, please.</p>	<p>東京から新潟まで、新幹線でだいたい一万円です。 <i>Tōkyō kara Nīgata made, shinkansen de daitai ichi-man-en desu.</i></p> <p>It costs about 10,000 yen for a bullet train from Tokyo to Niigata.</p>
<p>私とあなたには特別なご縁があると思います。 <i>Watashi to anata niwa tokubetsu na go-en ga aru to omoimasu.</i></p> <p>I think there is a special connection between you and me.</p>	<p>五円玉を集める。 <i>Goendama wo atsumeru.</i></p> <p>I collect five yen coins.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In English, we refer to the Japanese currency as the "Yen." But in Japanese, we say *en*. It's a much lighter sound. Now, the foreign exchange rate is always fluctuating, but I like to calculate the rate as roughly 100 Yen per one US dollar. Using this rough equation, a 1,000 Yen bill is like a 10-dollar bill. As for phrases necessary for foreign exchange, we'll cover that in another lesson.

Let's first go over how to say large numbers in Japanese. We covered 1 to 10 in a previous lesson. To recap: "one" is *ichi*, "two" is *ni*, "three" is *san*, "four" is *shi* or *yon*, "five" is *go*, "six" is *roku*, "seven" is *nana* or *shichi*, "eight" is *hachi*, "nine" is *kyū*, and "ten" is *jū*.

To say any number between 10 and 99, you simply combine words for 1 to 10. For 68, you would literally say "six, ten, eight" *roku-jū-hachi*. So if you needed to pay 68 yen, the store clerk would say *roku-jū-hachi-en desu*. What coins would you use to pay 68 yen? Well you can combine one 50-Yen coin, a 10-Yen coin, a 5-Yen coin, and three 1-Yen coins.

Aside from these coins, we also have 100-Yen coins and 500-Yen coins. In Japanese, one hundred is *hyaku*. To say 500, simply say the words "five" and "hundred." That would be *go-hyaku*. The same goes for most numbers. Now, there are exceptions to this rule: 300 becomes *san-byaku*, 600 becomes *ro-ppyaku*, and 800 becomes *ha-ppyaku*. That's because they're easier to pronounce that way.

Next, let's go over the bills. We have a 1,000-Yen bill, 5,000-Yen bill, and the 10,000-Yen bill. We also have a 2,000-Yen bill, which was printed back in the year 2000 to celebrate the new millennium, but I rarely see them used. Perhaps people are keeping them at home as souvenirs. I know I did that for a while!

Let's go over how to say these large numbers. "One thousand" is *sen*. "One thousand Yen" is simply, *sen-en*. "Two thousand Yen" is a combination of "two," "thousand," and "Yen," *ni-sen-en*. "Five thousand Yen" is *go-sen-en*.

Now comes the complicated part. In Japanese, 10,000 yen is not simply "ten, thousand." We have another word, *man*, which stands for "ten thousand." "Ten thousand Yen" is *ichi-man-en*. "Twenty thousand yen" is *ni-man-en*, which is literally "two ten-thousand." Thirty thousand is *san-man*, and so forth.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: The Dharma of Money and Numbers

Tip #1

In today's Sachiko's Secret, we'll talk money! Yes, my favorite topic...not! I actually have a very sweet story. The five-Yen coin is considered a good luck charm to help people find that special someone. Why would such a cheap coin that buys almost nothing be considered lucky? Because it covers the 5% consumption tax when you buy a 100-Yen product. Just kidding. No seriously, "five Yen" is called, *go en* in Japanese. This is a homophone with 縁 (*go-en*), a word that means, "karma" or "destiny to meet someone." That's why five-Yen coins are commonly given as donations at Shinto shrines, and you'll see a nicely wrapped five-Yen coin in a box at a souvenir shop. That's a gift that says, "I hope you meet that someone special in your life." Try it. Get one for yourself or for a friend and see what happens. If it works, tell us all about it!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #20

Internet Cafe

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

20

KANJI

1. このお店にはワイファイありますか？
2. ネットカフェ、あるいは、漫画喫茶はどこですか？
3. ネットにはどうやって接続しますか？
4. ユーザーネームとパスワードをお願いします。

KANA

1. このおみせにはわいふあいありますか？
2. ネットカフェ、あるいは、まんがきさはどこですか？
3. ネットにはどうやってせつぞくしますか？
4. ゆーざーねーむとぱすわーどをおねがいします。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kono o-mise ni wa Wai Fai arimasu ka?
2. Netto cafe aruiwa manga kissa wa doko desu ka?
3. Netto ni wa dō yatte setsuzoku shimasu ka?
4. Yūzānēmu to pasuwādo o onegai shimasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Does this store have WiFi?
2. Where is an internet cafe or manga cafe?
3. How do I access the Internet?
4. Username and password please

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
ネットカフェ	ネットカフェ	netto cafe	Internet cafe
パスワード	パスワード	pasuwādo	password
ユーザーネーム	ユーザーネーム	yūzā nēmu	username
します	します	shimasu	to do ;V3 (-masu form)
接続する	せつぞくする	setsuzoku suru	to connect
ネット	ネット	netto	net, Internet
あります	あります	arimasu	to exist; masu form
ワイファイ	ワイファイ	Wai Fai	WiFi
この	この	kono	this
どこ	どこ	doko	where
あるいは	あるいは	aruiwa	or
漫画喫茶	まんがきっさ	manga kissa	comic cafe, manga cafe
お願い	おねがい	onegai	please

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ネットカフェに行く。 <i>Nettokafe ni iku.</i></p> <p>I'll go to a net cafe.</p>	<p>パスワードは0000です。 <i>Pasuwādo wa 0000 desu.</i></p> <p>The password is 0000.</p>
<p>ユーザーネームとパスワードをお願いしま す。 <i>Yūzā nēmu to pasuwādo wo onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>User name and password please.</p>	<p>ゴルフをしますか。 <i>Gorufu o shimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you golf?</p>
<p>新しいパソコンでネットに接続する。 <i>Atarashī pasokon de netto ni setsuzoku suru.</i></p> <p>I'll connect the internet with a new PC.</p>	<p>ネットにはどうやって接続しますか。 <i>Netto niwa dōyatte setsuzoku shimasu ka.</i></p> <p>How do I access the internet?</p>
<p>アレルギーがあります。 <i>Arerugī ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have allergies.</p>	<p>このお店にはワイファイありますか。 <i>Kono o-mise niwa waifai arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Does this store have WiFi?</p>
<p>このかばんは税込み3000円です。 <i>Kono kaban wa zeikomi 3000-en desu.</i></p> <p>This bag is 3000 yen including tax.</p>	<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>
<p>紅茶がいいですか、あるいはコーヒーがい いですか。 <i>Kōcha ga ii desu ka, aruiwa kōhī ga ii desu ka.</i></p> <p>Would you like tea or coffee?</p>	<p>漫画喫茶で寝る。 <i>Mangakissa de neru.</i></p> <p>I sleep at a manga cafe.</p>
<p>サインをお願いします。 <i>Sain wo onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Your signature (autograph), please.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japan, there are many Internet cafes or *Netto Cafe*, which is simply the Japanese pronunciation of "Net café," near train stations or on the streets of commercial or

residential areas. They're not so hard to find. But sometimes, they're disguised in the form of a *manga kissa*, or "comic book cafe," which offers access to the computer as well as to libraries of comic books.

The first word *manga* means, "comic book." *Kissa* means, "cafe." So together, *manga kissa* means, "comic book cafe." In residential areas in particular, *manga kissas* may be easier to find than straightforward Internet cafes. So when you ask around, be sure to ask for both.

In Japanese, "Where is an Internet cafe or *manga* cafe?" is *Netto cafe aruiwa manga kissa wa doko desu ka?* *Aruiwa* means "or." So *Netto cafe aruiwa manga kissa* means "net cafe or *manga* cafe." *Wa* is the topic marking particle, and *doko* is "where." *Desu* is the copula, and *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. To understand the answers, check out upcoming lessons on directions!

Manga kissa are a dream come true for *manga otakus*, or comic book maniacs! The cafes have huge libraries of *manga* stacked from floor to ceiling. Their inventory includes all types of *manga*, old and new. And they also offer fashion magazines, tabloids, and other light reading for non-*manga* readers.

Manga kissa are really comfortable too! They have cushiony chairs and sofas for *manga* readers to relax in and computers lined up in one corner of the store for Net surfers. Some have secluded private rooms with leather chairs and your own computer! Others offer premium seats with luxuries, like reclining leather seats!

In addition, they often have all-you-can-drink bars that offer tea, coffee, soft drinks, and soda pop. (No alcohol, unfortunately.) And they sell all sorts of snacks and instant foods you can eat at the computer or on the sofas. Some *manga* cafes let you bring in food from other stores.

Now, let me walk you through what you need to do once you locate a *manga kissa*. When you walk into the store, approach the reception desk and tell them what you're here for. Just say, "Internet" or *manga* and they'll print out a tab that states the time you signed in. When you leave, simply bring that tab to the counter and they'll charge you for hours you stayed. The price is usually about 400 Yen to 500 Yen per hour, regardless of whether you used the Internet or read *manga*. The price is all inclusive for the time you stayed at the store. Some places have a discount for longer stays, such as 1200 Yen for three hours or an overnight discount package, so be sure to look over the entire price list before making a decision.

Another critical question for all you laptop-packing world trekkers is "Does this store have WIFI?" In Japanese, "Does this store have WIFI?" is *Kono omise ni wa Wai Fai arimasu ka?* The first word *kono* means, "this." This is followed by *o-mise*, which is a polite way of saying "store." *Ni* is a particle roughly translated as "in," "at," or "on." *Wa* is a topic-marking particle. *Wai Fai* is simply the Japanese pronunciation of the English syllables, "Wi Fi," and *arimasu* is the polite way of saying, "there is." The last particle *ka* turns a sentence into an interrogative.

In Japan, Wi-Fi access is available at various stores, cafes, and train stations. So many different companies offer these services that we can't mention them all here. But the

most familiar stores to non-Japanese may be Starbucks and McDonalds. Usually, a Japanese communications service company offers the service in conjunction with the store. So users have to sign up with the communications firm, and the payment and access methods will depend on the service provider.

To ask, "How do I access the Internet?" you would say, *Netto niwa dōyatte setsuzoku shimasu ka?* The first word *netto* is the Japanese pronunciation of the word "Net." *Ni* is a particle roughly translated as "in," "at," or "on." *Wa* is a topic-marking particle. *Dōyatte* is a casual way of saying, "how do I," and *setsuzoku* means, "connect." *Shimasu* is the polite way of saying, "will do," and *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative.

And when you sign up you'll be asked for a username and password. In Japanese, "Username and password please" is *Yūzānēmu to pasu wādo o onegai shimasu*. *Yūzānēmu* is the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "username," and *pasuwaado* is the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "password." *O* is the object-marking particle, and *onegai shimasu* is the polite way of saying, "please take care of it." When they ask you this, simply provide a username and password and you're on the Internet highway!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Midnight in the Garden of *Manga Kissa*

Tip #1

If you miss your last train at night, and you can't afford to stay in a five-star hotel, you can spend the night at a *manga kissa* until the first trains start running at around 5:00 AM. Some cafes are open twenty-four hours a day and offer overnight packages. The sofas are pretty comfortable, and you can also sleep in the secluded private rooms. Great idea, isn't it? I've had to resort to this measure several times after late-night karaoke. Trains don't run twenty-four hours in Tokyo so you have to always be aware of the last train heading home.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #21

Riding the Bus 1

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

21

KANJI

1. 成田空港までの切符を一枚下さい。
2. バス停はどこですか？

KANA

1. なりたくうこうまでの きっぷを いちまい ください。
2. ばすていはどこですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Narita kūkō made no kippu o ichi-mai kudasai.
2. Basu tei wa doko desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. One ticket to Narita Airport, please.
2. Where is the bus stop?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
2 枚	にまい	ni-mai	two tickets or pieces of paper

成田空港	なりたこうこう	Narita Kūkō	Narita Airport
まで	まで	made	to, until
切符	きっぷ	kippu	ticket
バス停	バスてい	basu tei	bus stop

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>二枚切符を下さい。 <i>Ni mai kippu wo kudasai.</i></p> <p>Two tickets please.</p>	<p>成田空港までいくらですか。 <i>Narita Kūkō made ikura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much does it cost to go to Narita airport?</p>
<p>成田空港までの切符を二枚下さい。 <i>Narita Kūkō made no kippu wo nimai kudasai.</i></p> <p>Two tickets to Narita airport please.</p>	<p>切符を四枚ください。 <i>Kippu o yon-mai kudasai.</i></p> <p>Four tickets, please.</p>
<p>わたしは、次のバス停で降ります。 <i>Watashi wa, tsugi no basutei de orimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll get off at the next bus stop.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Let's practice getting a bus ticket to Narita Airport. There are many ways to get to the airport, but if you have a lot of luggage, the bus may be the easiest because you can check your baggage in and just relax or sleep for a few hours on your way to the airport. If you took the trains, you may have to lug your baggage up and down the stairs to get to the platform, and you'll take up a lot of space on the train.

So let's go over getting tickets for a long-distance bus ride to Narita Airport. In Japanese, "One ticket to Narita Airport, please" is *Narita kūkō made no kippu o ichi mai kudasai*. The first words *Narita kūkō* mean "Narita Airport." This is followed by the word *made*, which means, "to" as in destination. *No* is a particle indicating the possessive form. *Kippu* means "ticket." The next word *o* is an object-marking particle. And *ichi* is "one." *Mai* is a counter

for tickets and other paper objects. And the last word, *kudasai*, means "please" or "please give me."

If you want to buy more than one ticket, simply change the word *ichi*, "one," to the number of tickets you want to purchase. For example, if you wanted to buy two tickets, you can change the number to *ni mai*" (Check out our lessons on counting numbers!) So the whole sentence would be *Narita kūkō made no kippu o ni mai kudasai*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: Riding Neighborhood Buses in Japan

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret! If you're going to ride the local buses that circle around a small neighborhood, you won't need to buy tickets beforehand. Usually, a local bus ride is one set price regardless of how long you ride it. Fares are usually the equivalent of about two US dollars for a one-way ride. When boarding a bus, you simply pay the fare into a machine right next to the driver. If you don't have exact change, you should tell your driver first because there's a separate slot you need to put your money into. Show the driver the money you have, and he'll point to the appropriate slot that dispenses change.

While on the bus, the driver will call out the name of the next stop, so keep your ears open! Because right before your next stop, you need to press a red button to let the driver know you'll be getting off. If there's no one standing by the bus stop, and none of the passengers are getting off at that bus stop, the bus will not make a stop. So be sure to press that red button located all over the bus next to each seat. You don't want to be left behind when you're trying to stick to your itinerary!

Tip #2

In Japan, the local bus stops are typically very small. They don't come with huge roof-top stalls. Most of the time, you'll find just a small round sign on a stick. So you may have difficulty finding the bus stop. There will be a timetable underneath the sign so that might help in identifying bus stops. But just in case, let's go over how to ask where the bus stop is. In Japanese, that would be *Basu tei wa doko desu ka?* The first word, *basu*, is the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "bus." *Basu tei* means, "bus stop." The next word is the topic-marking particle *wa*, followed by *doko*, which means "where." *Desu* is the rough equivalent of the verb "to be." And *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #22

Riding the Bus 2

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

22

KANJI

1. 次のバス停はどこですか？
2. 成田空港は次ですか？
3. 教えてください。

KANA

1. つぎのばすていは どこですか？
2. なりたくうこうは つぎですか？
3. おしえて ください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Tsugi no basutei wa doko desu ka?
2. Narita kūkō wa tsugi desu ka?
3. Oshiete kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. Where is the next bus stop?
2. Is Narita Airport the next stop?

CONT'D OVER

3. Please tell me.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
次	つぎ	tsugi	next	
バス停	バスてい	basu tei	bus stop	noun
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative word
成田	なりた	Narita	Narita	
空港	くうこう	kūkō	airport	noun
教える	おしえる	oshieru	to teach, to tell	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>次の駅は大阪です。 <i>Tsugi no eki wa Ōsaka desu.</i></p> <p>The next station is Osaka.</p>	<p>わたしは、次のバス停で降ります。 <i>Watashi wa, tsugi no basutei de orimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll get off at the next bus stop.</p>
<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>	<p>改札はどこですか。 <i>Kaisatsu wa doko desu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the ticket gate?</p>
<p>成田空港までいくらですか。 <i>Narita Kūkō made ikura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much does it cost to go to Narita airport?</p>	<p>嵐の影響で今日のフライトはすべてキャンセルされました。 <i>Arashi no eikyō de kyō no furaito wa subete kyanseru saremashita.</i></p> <p>There are no flights leaving the airport today, due to the stormy weather.</p>

明日空港に行きます。

Ashita kūkō ni ikimasu.

I'm going to the airport tomorrow.

成田空港の行き方を教えてください。

Narita kūkō no ikikata o oshiete kudasai.

Please tell me how to get to Narita airport.

水を下さい。

Mizu o kudasai.

Can I have some water, please?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Once you're on the bus, you'll hear announcements informing the passengers of where the bus will stop next. If there's no English announcement, you may not catch what the driver is saying. So the phrase, "What is the next stop?" may be indispensable. In Japanese, "What is the next stop?" is *Tsugi no basutei wa doko desu ka?* The first word, *tsugi*, means "next." *No* is a particle we use to express possession. *Basutei* means, "bus stop." So far, we have *Tsugi no basutei*, which means, "the next bus stop." Then we have the topic-marking particle *wa*, followed by *doko*, which means, "where." *Desu* is the rough equivalent of the verb "to be," and *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative sentence.

Another way of checking if your bus is headed toward your destination could be asking if your destination is the next stop. For this phrase, we'll use Narita Airport as the destination. So the phrase, "Is Narita Airport the next stop?" is *Narita kūkō wa tsugi desu ka?* The first words *Narita kūkō* mean "Narita Airport." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*, then followed by *tsugi*, which means "next." *Desu* is the copula, and *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So altogether, we have *Narita kūkō wa tsugi desu ka?* to mean, "Is Narita Airport the next stop?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: More About Riding the Bus in Japan

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret! In this lesson, I'll show you how to make sure you're on the

right bus and have the bus driver remind you where to get off at the same time. Kill two birds with one stone! Because there are so many buses in Tokyo, it's really difficult to figure out where each bus is going. So this is what I do. When you step onto a bus, check with the driver before you pay the bus fare. To confirm whether this bus stops at your desired destination, you can simply say the name of the desired destination and wait for the driver to nod or shake his head. Then ask him to tell you when the bus reaches that destination. You can do that by simply saying the destination name followed by *Oshiete kudasai*, which means, "Please tell me." That way, he can call out to you when he stops there!

Tip#2

If you get a chance, I would suggest riding a small, local bus. They're really small and short so they can get through the narrow streets of Japan. They're adorable to look at. And you'll be amazed by the driver's skills for dodging pedestrians, cyclists, and baby strollers.

And because they're so small, we have to cooperate in keeping the flow of passengers nice and smooth. You can do that by exiting from the doors in the middle of the bus. The front doors are reserved for passengers getting onto the bus. By keeping the flow of passengers one-way, we can prevent the small buses from cramping!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #23

Riding the Rails 1

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

23

KANJI

1. 東京駅までの切符を下さい。

KANA

1. とうきょうえきまでの きっぷを ください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Tōkyō eki made no kippu o kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. A ticket to Tokyo Station, please.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
東京駅	とうきょうえき	Tōkyō Eki	Tokyo Station	
切符	きっぷ	kippu	ticket	noun
行きますか	いきますか	ikimasu ka	does it go (polite form)	
一枚	いちまい	ichi-mai	one sheet, one piece	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ここは東京駅です。 <i>Koko wa Tōkyō eki desu.</i></p> <p>This is Tokyo Station.</p>	<p>切符を四枚ください。 <i>Kippu o yon-mai kudasai.</i></p> <p>Four tickets, please.</p>
<p>このバスは成田に行きますか。 <i>Kono basu wa Narita ni ikimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Does this bus go to Narita?</p>	<p>東京駅までの切符を一枚ください。 <i>Tōkyō eki made no kippu wo ichi-mai kudasai.</i></p> <p>One ticket to Tokyo Station please.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japan, we can buy train tickets at the ticket gate window or vending machines within each station. In Japanese, "One ticket to Tokyo Station, please" is *Tōkyō eki made no kippu o kudasai*. The first words *Tōkyō eki* mean, "Tokyo Station." The following word, *made*, means "to" as in "to a destination." This is followed by *no*, which is the rough equivalent of "of." This is followed by *kippu*, which means "ticket." So far, we have *Tōkyō eki made no kippu*, which means "ticket to Tokyo Station."

The last word *kudasai* means, "please give me." So altogether we have, *Tōkyō Eki made no kippu o kudasai*. Literally, this means, "To Tokyo Station, of, ticket, please give me." or "Please give me a ticket to Tokyo Station."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: Navigating the Tokyo Subway

Tip #1

Today's Sachiko's Secret is encouraging news about the Tokyo subway system. I don't remember when this happened, but decades ago, all the station names were written mostly in Japanese or just alphabetization of the Japanese names. So foreigners had no choice but to memorize really long and complicated names such as *Shinjuku San-chōme*.

But now, in addition to the original Japanese names, each station has an alphabet indicating the train line and a number indicating the stop. For example, the station called *Shinjuku*

San-chōme on the *Marunouchi* Line is also written as M9. "M" stands for the *Marunouchi* subway line. "9" means the ninth stop. So "M9" means the ninth stop on the *Marunouchi* Line. When you look at a map or look at the platforms when riding the trains, all you have to remember is "M9." That's much easier to remember than long names such as *Shinjuku San-chōme* or *Akasaka Mitsuke*.

Tip #2

If you look at a Tokyo subway map, you'll notice that it's very colorful! Now, the colors indicating each subway line are not just random colors the printer used when printing the map. Each subway line has a symbolic color, and that color is used on the platforms, maps, trains, and everything! For example, the *Marunouchi* Line, which we talked about earlier, is always red. So if you're at the maze-like *Shinjuku* Station (where numerous train lines merge) and looking for the *Marunouchi* Line, you can simply follow the directions marked in red. The words "*Marunouchi* Line" are most likely written in red to catch your eyes. This little knowledge could help you from going insane underground! Oh, and watch out for the pink *Ōedo* Line! Because it's one of the newer lines, it's located really deep underground. This means you have to take many, many flights of stairs to reach the platform! It can get really exhausting commuting on the *Ōedo* Line everyday!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #24

Riding the Rails 2

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

24

KANJI

1. 大阪駅までの切符を下さい。

KANA

1. おおさかえきまでの きっぷを ください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Ōsaka eki made no kippu o kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. Tickets to Osaka Station, please.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
大阪駅	おおさかえき	Ōsaka eki	Osaka Station	
切符	きっぷ	kippu	ticket	noun
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
地元	じもと	jimoto	local, hometown	
新幹線	しんかんせん	shinkansen	bullet train	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

大阪駅はどこにありますか。 <i>Ōsaka eki wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i>	二枚切符を下さい。 <i>Ni mai kippu wo kudasai.</i>
Where is Osaka station?	Two tickets please.
水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i>	地元は東京です。 <i>Jimoto wa Tōkyō desu.</i>
Can I have some water, please?	My hometown is Tokyo.
<p>新幹線が、ゆっくりと速度を落としていく。 <i>Shinkansen ga yukkuri to sokudo o otoshite iku.</i></p> <p>The bullet train is slowly losing speed.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

The fastest *Shinkansen* model, the super express *Nozomi*, connects Tokyo and Osaka in about two and a half hours. That's about 500 kilometers in distance. It's really convenient! So let's work on getting the ticket.

To get a Bullet Train ticket, we need to ask, "Ticket to destination please." In today's lesson, we'll use Ōsaka Station as a destination. In Japanese, "station" is *eki*. So our location is *Ōsaka eki*. In Japanese, "Tickets to Osaka Station, please" is *Ōsaka eki made no kippu o kudasai*. The first words *Ōsaka eki* are obviously "Osaka Station." This is followed by *made*, a particle we can translate as "to" as in "to a destination." The particle *no* can be roughly translated as "of." *Kippu* means "ticket." So to recap here, we have *Ōsaka eki made no kippu*. Literally, this means, "Osaka Station, to, of, ticket" or "tickets to Osaka Station." Let's take a look at the remaining sentence. *O* is an object-marking particle. And the last word, *kudasai*, means, "please." So altogether, we have *Ōsaka eki made no kippu o kudasai*. Literally, this means "Osaka station, to, of, tickets, please." or "Tickets to Osaka Station, please."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: Faster Than a Speeding Bullet Train

Tip #1

And now for Sachiko's Secret. I always take the *Shinkansen* when I go home to Osaka from Tokyo where I now live. So I'm a seasoned pro! Let me take you through the steps of buying *Shinkansen* tickets. First, get to a JR station where the *Shinkansen* stops, such as Tokyo Station or Shin-Osaka Station. JR is the name of the previously state-owned train line that covers almost all parts of Japan. Find a *Shinkansen* counter, and tell the person your destination. He'll tell you which *Shinkansen* route you need to take. There are many different *Shinkansen* routes depending on the destination, so be sure you have the right one. For example, the Tokyo-to-Osaka route would be on the *Tokai Shinkansen* Line. So you would go to the counter for the *Tokai Shinkansen*.

At the counter, tell them if you want seats in an ordinary car or the first-class "green car." All seats in the green car are reserved seating, so you will get a specific seat number. But if you want a seat in the ordinary car, you can choose between a reserved or non-reserved seat. The great thing about reserved seats is that you are guaranteed a seat. But you have to make sure you get on that specific train. I personally prefer non-reserved seating because I don't want to worry about making it on time for a particular train. With non-reserved seats, there is always the risk of not being able to sit on the *Shinkansen*. But reserved seats sell out quickly, so a non-reserved ticket may get you on an earlier train. Once you get the ticket, find out which platform your *Shinkansen* leaves from, and make sure you're there when the bullet train pulls in. Enjoy!

Tip #2

When you get yourself a seat on the *Shinkansen*, pay attention to the vendors that come by. They often sell delicacies from the local regions that the *Shinkansen* is passing by. For example, on my way from Osaka to Tokyo, I can buy *uirō*, a type of jelly snack that is a delicacy from Nagoya. Yummm. If you're not sure what the local delicacies are, just ask the vendor, *Jimoto no gochisō wa?* which is a simplified way of saying, "What are the local delicacies?"

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #25

Riding the Rails 3

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

25

KANJI

1. 東京駅まで行きますか？

KANA

1. とうきょうえきまで いきますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Tōkyō eki made ikimasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Will this train go to Tokyo Station?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
東京	とうきょう	Tōkyō	Tokyo (current capital of Japan)	
駅	えき	eki	station	noun
行きますか	いきますか	ikimasu ka	does it go (polite form)	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

出身は東京です。
Shusshin wa Tōkyō desu.

I'm from Tokyo.

次の駅は大阪です。
Tsugi no eki wa Ōsaka desu.

The next station is Osaka.

このバスは成田に行きますか。
Kono basu wa Narita ni ikimasu ka.

Does this bus go to Narita?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

When you're on the platform, and you want to confirm if the train is going to your destination, you can ask a fellow passenger or an employee of the railway company, "Will this train go to ____?" followed by a destination.

In today's lesson, we'll use Tokyo Station as our destination. In Japanese, "Will (this train) go to Tokyo Station?" is *Tōkyō eki made ikimasu ka?* The first words *Tōkyō eki* mean, "Tokyo Station." The following word *made* means, "to" as in "to a destination." *Ikimasu ka* means, "Will it go?" The dictionary form of the verb "to go" is *iku*. *Ikimasu* is the polite way of saying "it will go." The last sound *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. Altogether, *Tōkyō eki made ikimasu ka?* means, "Will this train go to Tokyo Station?"

When you use this phrase, be sure to point to a train because the phrase itself does not contain the subject "this train." Japanese sentences can function without subjects so there is nothing wrong with this sentence. We could have taught the full sentence, but since this is SurvivalPhrases.com, we decided to introduce short simple sentences.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret: Caution, Courtesy, and the Rush Hour Crush on Trains

Tip #1

Today's portion of Sachiko's Secret is about what to be careful of when riding trains. My first tip is to always double check where your train is headed. Be careful, because some train lines

split into different train lines at certain stations. That's really convenient for people who need to transfer to that other line because they won't have to go up and down the stairs to get to another train line. But when you're taking the train for the first time, it can be a nightmare! There is one indicator of a train line splitting. If the train on the opposite side of the platform is painted a different color than the train you're on, the train on the opposite track belongs to another train line. Another reason to check constantly is that local trains and express trains make different stops. So if you get on an express train, it may not stop at the local station you want to get off at. And some express trains make different stops depending on the time of day. So it really pays to constantly double check!

Another tip is about manners. On Japanese trains, we have many rules to abide by so as not to disturb other passengers. They may sound trivial, but when the trains are packed with people, the slightest disturbance can really raise the irritation level. And you don't want to cause a riot on a packed train! So let's go over some of those rules. First of all, if you're on a packed train, obviously don't take up seats with your bag or other luggage. There are overhead racks to store your bags. Also, if you're standing on the train and wearing a backpack, don't keep the bag on your back. It takes up so much space! Put the bag on the overhead rack or on the ground where there is more space. Second, cell-phone use is discouraged, so keep your cell phone on vibrator mode, and when it rings, don't pick it up. Let the answering machine get the message and call back later. Some people who need to pick up urgent calls will answer their phones and whisper quickly, "On the train; call you back." But generally, we're advised to not use the phone. And last, keep the so-called "Silver Seat" or "courtesy seats," reserved for the elderly, physically challenged, or pregnant people. You can sit in these seats if there is no one around, but once a person who fits the above description comes on the train, you should give up your seat. Simply, look the person in the eye, point to the seat and say *Dōzo*, which means, "Please take it."

Tip #2

While we're on the topic of packed trains, let me describe rush hour hell in Japan! On a packed train during rush hour (between 6:00 AM and 9:00 AM, depending on how far you are from central Tokyo), I would feel at least four people pressing up against me from all sides! The other passengers would be so close to me, I'd feel every muscle in their bodies, see every wrinkle on their faces, and smell every drop of sweat! And because I'm not very tall (158cm), I often get men's chests pressing against my face. Sometimes, I seriously worry that I might suffocate!

And the lack of leg space! With people sitting in front of me, and everyone else putting their bags on the ground instead of on the overhead rack because that too is full during rush hour, I was once stuck standing in an awkward position where my legs were crossed and bent. And I had nothing to hold onto because there weren't enough straps for everyone to hang onto, so I had to put strength into my legs to balance myself whenever the train shook sideways. After thirty minutes in that position, I pulled my calf muscles as I got off the train!

Interestingly, railway company employees on the platform will push passengers farther into the train. Without this effort, the train doors will not close! I suppose they do this also to prevent

people's arms and legs from being caught in the doors. But I would prefer that they simply stop passengers from boarding when the trains are moderately full!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #26

Taking a Taxi

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

26

KANJI

1. 東京駅へお願いします。
2. 地図をお願いします。
3. タクシーをお願いします。
4. タクシー乗り場はどこですか？

KANA

1. とうきょうえきへおねがいします。
2. ちずをおねがいします。
3. たくしーをおねがいします。
4. たくしーのりばはどこですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Tōkyō eki e onegai shimasu.
2. Chizu onegai shimasu.
3. Takushī o onegai shimasu.
4. Takushī noriba wa doko desu ka?

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I would like to go to Tokyo Station.
2. I would like a map.
3. Please get me a taxi.
4. Where is the taxi stand?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
東京	とうきょう	Tōkyō	Tokyo (current capital of Japan)	
駅	えき	eki	station (train, subway, etc.)	
地図	ちず	chizu	map	noun
お願い	おねがい	onagai	please	
タクシー	タクシー	takushii	taxi	noun
タクシー乗り場	タクシーのりば	takushī noriba	taxi stand, taxi terminal	
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative
住所	じゅうしょ	jūsho	address (of a house, office, building, etc.)	
時間	じかん	jikan	time	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>出身は東京です。 <i>Shusshin wa Tōkyō desu.</i></p> <p>I'm from Tokyo.</p>	<p>東京駅までの切符を一枚ください。 <i>Tōkyō eki made no kippu wo ichi-mai kudasai.</i></p> <p>One ticket to Tokyo Station please.</p>
<p>地図をください。 <i>Chizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please give me the map.</p>	<p>サインをお願いします。 <i>Sain o onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Your signature (autograph), please.</p>
<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi terminal?</p>	<p>すみません。タクシー乗り場は...。 <i>Sumimasen. Takushī noriba wa....</i></p> <p>Excuse me. Where's the taxi stand?</p>
<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>	<p>住所はどこですか。 <i>Jūsho wa doko desu ka.</i></p> <p>What's your address?</p>
<p>東京からパリまで十二時間かかります。 <i>Tōkyō kara pari made jū ni-jikan kakarimasu.</i></p> <p>It takes 12 hours to go to Paris from Tokyo.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

When you want to tell a taxi driver where to go, the most basic thing to say is the word *e* followed by a destination. In today's lesson, we'll use Tokyo Station as our destination. In Japanese, "station" is *eki*. So our destination is *Tōkyō eki*. And the phrase, "to Tokyo Station" would be *Tōkyō eki e*.

You can also say, "I would like to go to Tokyo Station" in a polite way, which would be *Tōkyō eki e onegai shimasu*. *Onegai shimasu* is simply a polite way of saying, "Please take care of this." It consists of two parts. *Onegai* means "a favor," and *shimasu* is the polite way of saying "to do." You can use this phrase in many situations. For example, if you simply want something, you can say the noun and add *onegai shimasu*. To ask for a map, you can say *Chizu o o-negai shimasu*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tip #1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. You may have read about this, but taxis in Japan treat customers like royalty! The doors open automatically, the seats are covered with clear plastic sheets, and the trunks are usually clean and spacious. Most drivers wear crisp uniforms with white gloves, making you feel as though you have your own butler! And the drivers-like many customer service people in Japan-are very kind, polite, and knowledgeable. They'll tell you anything you need to know if you're not familiar with the area, including the best noodle shops in the neighborhood and the shortest route to a destination. Years ago, when I often worked late and took the cab home at around 3:00 AM, I would often ask taxi drivers to wake me up when we got near my house, because I was so exhausted I needed those precious thirty minutes to sleep! Most drivers would drive carefully to let me sleep and gladly wake me up when we arrived! One driver offered me candy when I woke up. And another offered me a tissue when I had a runny nose! Sweet!

But remember one thing! When getting in or out of a taxi, don't try to open the door by yourself. They're fully automated. You don't want to hurt yourself or break the door!

Tip #2

The easiest way to get a cab is to go to a train station. Most major train stations have a taxi stand where people line up for cabs. This is the safest bet, but be careful, as these lines can get really long at night after the last trains run out! In Japan we call taxi stands *takushī noriba*. *Takushī* is simply the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "taxi." *Noriba* simply means "the place to board." To ask, "Where is the taxi stand?" you can say *Takushī noriba wa doko desu ka?* *Wa* is a topic-marking particle, and *doko* means "where." *Desu* is the rough equivalent of the verb "to be," and *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative.

You could also try to flag down a taxi driving around the streets. It's fairly easy to find cabs driving around within a busy commercial district. But in a quiet residential area, especially in rural Japan, you might have a difficult time finding one just driving around. In that case, you need to get a phone book and call a local taxi company. To ask for a taxi, simply say *Takushī o onegai shimasu* and give them your address-*jūsho*-and the time-*jikan*-that you want to be picked up. *Takushī* again is simply the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "taxi." And *o* is an object-marking particle. *Onegai shimasu* is the polite way of saying, "please give me" or "please take care of it."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #27

Where Can I Buy Manga?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

27

KANJI

1. 漫画はどこで買えますか？

KANA

1. まんがはどこでかえますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Manga wa doko de kaemasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Where can I buy manga?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
漫画	まんが	manga	comics, manga	noun
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative
買う	かう	kau	to buy	verb
着物	きもの	kimono	kimono	noun
足袋	たび	tabi	Japanese socks	
草履	ぞうり	zōri	Japanese sandals	

浴衣	ゆかた	yukata	light cotton kimono	noun
----	-----	--------	------------------------	------

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>好きな漫画は何ですか。 <i>Sukina manga wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is your favorite manga?</p>	<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>
<p>彼は川ぞいの家を犬のために買うつもりです。 <i>Kare wa kawazoi no ie o inu no tame ni kau tsumori desu.</i></p> <p>He will buy a house next to the river for his dog.</p>	<p>つぎはもうちょっと食りようを買ったほうがいいんじゃない？ <i>Tsugi wa mō chotto shokuryō o katta hō ga ii n ja nai?</i></p> <p>Why don't you buy more groceries next time?</p>
<p>私はお腹がすいて買い物に行くといつも食料を買いすぎてしまう。 <i>Watashi wa onaka ga suite kaimono ni iku to itsumo shokuryō o kaisugite shimau.</i></p> <p>I always buy too many groceries when I am hungry.</p>	<p>毎日、スターバックスでコーヒーを買う。 <i>Mainichi, Sutābakkusu de kōhī o kau.</i></p> <p>I buy coffee at Starbucks everyday.</p>
<p>私は着物が好きです。 <i>Watashi wa kimono ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like kimonos.</p>	<p>足袋はどこで買えますか？ <i>Tabi wa doko de kaemasuka?</i></p> <p>Where can I buy Japanese socks?</p>
<p>草履はどこで買えますか？ <i>Zōri wa doko de kaemasuka?</i></p> <p>Where can I buy Japanese sandals?</p>	<p>浴衣がありますか。 <i>Yukata ga arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have a yukata (light cotton kimono)?</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Where can I buy manga?" is *Manga wa doko de kaemasu ka?* The first word

manga means "comic book." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. *Doko* means "where." To recap, we have *manga wa doko*, Literally, this means "comic book, where." We use the next particle *de* to indicate location, among other things. The next word *kaemasu* is the polite way of saying, "can buy." The dictionary form of the verb "to buy" is *kau*. And the last sound *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So altogether, we have *Manga wa doko de kaemasu ka?* Literally, this means, "Comic book, where can buy?" or "Where can I buy a comic book?"

Most likely, the answer would be "any bookstore," but the Mecca for manga and animation goods is a place called Akihabara, where you can also find a bunch of electronic gadgets. Akihabara Station is just two stops north of Tokyo Station on the JR Yamanote Line. Get off at the station and walk around. You'll find plenty of manga stores there. If you don't bump into one by accident, just ask a passerby today's phrase.

To ask for a different item, we can replace the word *manga* with any other word. Let's try *kimono*, which is the traditional Japanese attire. In Japanese, "Where can I buy a kimono?" is *Kimono wa doko de kaemasu ka?*

This phrase will come in handy when asking taxi drivers, hotel staff, or passersby for help to find that specific gift that your friend asked you to get. Now that you're able to ask, you're going to get an answer. That will be a whole other lesson in itself! Be sure to check out our lesson on directions!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip on When to Wear a Kimono in Japan!

Tip #1

In today's Sachiko's Secret, we'll go over the basics of traditional Japanese attire, since we mentioned the word *kimono* in our lesson. As I mentioned before, *kimono* is the name of the traditional Japanese attire that you've seen geisha and other women wearing in the movies or on posters. They're several layers of cloth-most likely silk-wrapped around the body and tied with an *obi*, or "sash," around the stomach. You can tie the *obi* in lots of different ways, from simple shapes to really elaborate ones. On your feet, you wear *tabi*, ankle-high white socks that are separated between the big toe and other toes, and a pair of *zōri*, which are flat sandals. Now, you may have heard the term *yukata* as well. *Yukata* are casual *kimonos*, typically made of cotton rather than silk or synthetic fabric, and often worn in the summer or after a bath. (In fact, the two characters used to write *yukata* stand for "bathing" and "clothes.") That's why *yukata* are lightweight and not worn in layers.

In modern-day Japan, the typical Japanese would only wear a *kimono* or *yukata* on special occasions. We would wear a *yukata* to a summer festival to dance the traditional *bon-odori* or to watch fireworks. We typically wear a *kimono* on New Year's visits to shrines or temples, as

well as to graduation ceremonies, weddings, and other celebrations. We might also wear a *kimono* as a uniform, depending on the profession. For example, women waitressing at Japanese restaurants or working at traditional Japanese inns might wear them all day at work. That's pretty grueling, considering how tight-fitting they are!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #28

Is There a Store Nearby?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

28

KANJI

1. コンビニは近くにありますか？

KANA

1. コンビニにはちかくにありますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Konbini wa chikaku ni arimasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Is there a convenience store around here?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
コンビニ	コンビニ	konbini	convenience store	noun
近く	ちかく	chikaku	near	
ある	ある	aru	to be, to exist	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>私はコンビニに行きます。 <i>Watashi wa konbini ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll go to the convenience store.</p>	<p>コンビニは近くにありますか。 <i>Konbini wa chikaku ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Is there a convenience store nearby?</p>
<p>近くに駅がありますか。 <i>Chikaku ni eki ga arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Is there a station nearby?</p>	<p>このお店にはWi-Fiありますか。 <i>Kono o-mise ni wa WaiFai arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Does this store have Wi-Fi?</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll go over how to ask for a particular store. First, we need a store to ask for, so let's use the word "convenience store." In Japanese, we pronounce "convenience store" the Japanese way *konbiniensu sutoa* and often shorten it to *kon-bini*. In Japanese, "Is there a convenience store around here?" is *Konbini wa chikaku ni arimasu ka?* The first word *konbini* means "convenience store." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. *Chikaku* means "nearby." *Ni* is a particle we use to describe where people or things are. *Arimasu* is the polite way of saying "there is." The dictionary form of the verb describing existence is *aru*. And the last word *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So altogether, we have *Kon-bini wa chikaku ni arimasu ka?* Literally, this means, "Convenience store, nearby, is there?" or "Is there a convenience store nearby?"

This phrase will come in handy when talking with taxi drivers or other people trying to help you locate a desired item. Now that you're able to ask, you're going to get an answer. Be sure to check out our lesson on directions for that!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip About Japanese Convenience Stores!

Tip #1

For Sachiko's Secret, let me illustrate the wonders of convenience stores in Japan. First of all, they're everywhere! In metropolitan Japan, there's one on every block at least. And they're usually open twenty-four hours a day, so they're super convenient; hence, their name! How do they all stay in business with so much competition? My suspicion is that because so many

Japanese people work until late at night, by the time they get off work (at 11:00 PM or later) the only places open are convenience stores. I remember when I worked like a madwoman years ago; I often had no choice but to go to the convenience store because I got off work so late!

Secondly, convenience stores sell everything you can imagine-prepackaged and fresh foods, snacks, drinks, stationery, toilet paper, toothbrushes, Band-aids, batteries, and even underwear! They also sell a variety of prepared foods, such as rice balls, sandwiches, salads, heat-able noodles, and rice dishes. And of course, they'll heat the dish for you in their microwave as you wait. In the winter, I love to buy hot prepared foods, such as steamed buns, hot dogs, and *oden* (various fish cakes soaked in lightly flavored soup). Some convenience stores now have counters and stools where you can eat whatever you bought there. Many students take advantage of this and spend hours after school at convenience stores.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #29

Directions

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 3 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar
- 7 Cultural Insight

29

KANJI

1. まっすぐ進む。
2. 右に曲がる。
3. 左に曲がる。
4. 突き当たりで右に曲がる。
5. 二つ目の信号までまっすぐ進む。
6. コンビニで右に曲がる。
7. 銀行で左に曲がる。
8. 郵便局で右に曲がる。

KANA

1. まっすぐすすむ。
2. みぎにまがる。
3. ひだりにまがる。
4. つきあたりでみぎにまがる。
5. ふたつめのしんごうまでまっすぐすすむ。
6. コンビニでみぎにまがる。

CONT'D OVER

7. ぎんこうでひだりにまがる。
8. ゆうびんきょくでみぎにまがる。

ROMANIZATION

1. Massugu susumu.
2. Migi ni magaru.
3. Hidari ni magaru.
4. Tsukiatari de migi ni magaru.
5. Futatsume no shingō made massugu susumu.
6. Konbini de migi ni magaru.
7. Ginkō de hidari ni magaru.
8. Yūbinkyoku de migi ni magaru.

ENGLISH

1. Go straight.
2. Turn right.
3. Turn left.

CONT'D OVER

4. Turn right at the dead end.
5. Go straight until the second traffic signal.
6. Turn right at the convenience store.
7. Turn left at the bank.
8. Turn right at the post office.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
信号	しんごう	shingō	signal, traffic light	noun
四つ目	よっつめ	yottsu-me	fourth	adjective
三つ目	みっつめ	mittsu-me	third	
一つ目	ひとつめ	hitotsu-me	first	
銀行	ぎんこう	ginkō	bank	noun
郵便局	ゆうびんきょく	yūbinkyoku	post office	noun
二つ目	ふたつめ	futatsu-me	second	adjective
突き当たり	つきあたり	tsuki atari	dead end	
進む	すすむ	susumu	to advance, to make progress	verb
左	ひだり	hidari	left	noun
右	みぎ	migi	right	noun
曲がる	まがる	magaru	to turn, to bend	

まっすぐ	まっすぐ	massugu	straight ; Adj (na), Adv.
五つ目	いつつめ	itsutsu-me	fifth

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>次の信号を左に曲がってください。 <i>Tsugi no shingō wo hidari ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn left at the next traffic signal.</p>	<p>四つ目の信号で右に曲がります。五つ目の角まで進みます。 <i>Yottsu-me no shingō de migi ni magarimasu. Itsutsu-me no kado made susumimasu .</i></p> <p>Turn right at the fourth traffic signal. Go straight until the fifth corner.</p>
<p>三つ目の駅で降ります。 <i>Mittsume no eki de orimasu.</i></p> <p>I will get off at the third station.</p>	<p>一つ目の信号を右に曲がります。そして、まっすぐ行きます。三つ目の信号を左に曲がります。 <i>Hitotsu-me no shingō wo migi ni magarimasu. Soshite, massugu ikimasu. Sanban-me no shingō wo hidari ni magarimasu.</i></p> <p>Turn left at the first traffic signal. Then go straight. Then turn left at the third traffic signal.</p>
<p>彼はもっとサービスのよい銀行を見つけるべきだ。 <i>Kare wa motto sābisu no yoi ginkō o mitsukeru beki da.</i></p> <p>He has to find a bank that offers a better service.</p>	<p>日本橋に日本銀行があります。 <i>Nihonbashi ni Nihon-ginkō ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There's a Bank of Japan in Nihonbashi.</p>
<p>この通りに郵便局があります。 <i>Kono tōri ni yūbinkyoku ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There is a post office on this street.</p>	<p>まっすぐ行って、郵便局で右に曲がる。 <i>Massugu itte, yūbinkyoku de migi ni magaru.</i></p> <p>Go straight and turn right at the post office.</p>
<p>二つ目までの信号までまっすぐ進む。 <i>Futatsu-me made no shingō made massugu susumu.</i></p> <p>Go straight until the second traffic signal.</p>	<p>突き当たりを右に曲がってください。 <i>Tsukiatari wo migi ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn right at the dead end.</p>

<p>まっすぐ進んでください。 <i>Massugu susunde kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please go straight.</p>	<p>左に曲がってください。 <i>Hidari ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn left.</p>
<p>コンビニの左に、おいしいラーメン屋があります。 <i>Konbini no hidari ni oishii rāmen-ya ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There is a good ramen shop to the left of the convenience store.</p>	<p>右に曲がってください。 <i>Migi ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn right.</p>
<p>右にコンビニがあります。 <i>Migi ni konbini ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There is a convenience store on the right side.</p>	<p>左に曲がってください。 <i>Hidari ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please turn left.</p>
<p>まっすぐ行ってください。 <i>Massugu itte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please go straight.</p>	<p>五つ目のレッスンまで終わりました。 <i>Itsusu-me no ressun made owarimashita</i></p> <p>I've done five lessons.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Go straight" is *Massugu susumu*. The first word *massugu* means "straight." This is followed by *susumu*, which means, "proceed straight." So altogether, we have *Massugu susumu*. Literally, this means, "straight proceed."

Now let's work on turning. In Japanese, "to turn" is *magaru*. So, to turn right, we put the direction before it. "Right" is *migi*. To turn to the right, we say *Migi ni magaru*. *Ni* is a particle we use to indicate location. "Turn right at the convenience store" is *Konbini de migi ni magaru*. *Konbini*, as we've covered in other lessons, is the abbreviation and Japanese pronunciation of the English words "convenience store." *De* is a particle we use to mean "at" or "in." So together, it's *Konbini de migi ni magaru*, to mean, "Turn right at the convenience store."

Now let's try "turn left." "Left" in Japanese is *hidari*. So "Turn left" is *Hidari ni magaru*. The first word *hidari* is "left." *Ni* is a particle we use to indicate location. *Magaru* means "to turn," so "Turn left" is *Hidari ni magaru*. "Turn left at the convenience store" is *Konbini de hidari ni magaru*. *De* is a particle we use to mean "at" or "in." So together, it's *Konbini de*

hidari ni magaru meaning, "Turn left at the convenience store."

We can easily change the store, which we used as an indicator above, to another location. For example, you can use *ginkō* to mean "bank," or *yūbinkyoku* to mean "post office." So, "Turn left at the bank" is *Ginkō de hidari ni magaru*. "Turn right at the post office" is *Yūbin kyoku de hidari ni magaru*.

Another common phrase is *tsukiatari*, which means "dead end," or "where a street just ends." "Turn right at the dead end" would be *Tsuki atari de migi ni magaru*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip to Understanding Japanese Directions!

Tip #1

Today's Sachiko's Secret is about-what else?-directions! The Japanese way of giving directions is a bit different from Western ways. First of all, we don't use the term "blocks." Instead, we use traffic signals to count the number of blocks. So you might hear someone say, "Go straight until the second traffic signal." "Traffic signal" in Japanese is *shingō*. "The second traffic signal" is *futatsume no shingō*. So to say, "Go straight until the second traffic signal" would be *Futatsu-me no shingō made massugu susumu*. Now, the numbers we use in this sentence differ from the typical numbers of "one," "two," "three," "four," and "five," which are *ichi, ni, san, shi (or yon)*, and *go*. Instead, we use a type of ordinal number. "First," "second," "third," "fourth," and "fifth" are *hitotsu-me, futatsu-me, mittsu-me, yottsu-me*, and *itsutsu-me*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #30

Taking Pictures

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

30

KANJI

1. 写真を撮って下さい。
2. 写真を撮らせて下さい。
3. 写真を一緒に撮らせて下さい。

KANA

1. シャしんをとってください。
2. シャしんをとらせてください。
3. シャしんをいっしょにとらせてください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Shashin o totte kudasai.
2. Shashin o torasete kudasai.
3. Shashin o issho ni torasete kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. Please take our picture.
2. Please let me take your picture.

CONT'D OVER

3. Please let me take a picture with you.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
写真	しゃしん	shashin	photograph	noun
撮る	とる	toru	to take (a picture)	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
一緒に	いっしょに	issho ni	together	phrase

SAMPLE SENTENCES

写真を撮ってください。 <i>Shashin o totte kudasai.</i> Please take a picture.	写真を一緒に撮らせて下さい。 <i>Shashin o issho ni torasete kudasai.</i> Please let me take a picture with you.
水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i> Can I have some water, please?	僕たち一緒にパーティーに行こうよ。 <i>Bokutachi issho ni pātī ni ikō yo.</i> We should go to the party together.
いっしょにコンサートに行きましょう。 <i>Issho ni konsāto ni ikimashō.</i> Let's go to a concert together.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We'll go over both, "Will you take our picture?" and "May I take your picture?" We'll also try, "May I take a picture with you?" If you want to take a picture of someone or with

someone, it's always best to ask for their permission first.

Let's start with the first question. In Japanese, "Please take our picture" is *Shashin o totte kudasai*. The first word *shashin* means "photo." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. The next word *totte* is a form of the verb *toru*, which means, "to take." To recap, we have *Sha-shin o totte*, which literally means, "Photo, take." This is followed by *kudasai*, which means "please." So together, *Sha-shin o totte kudasai* is literally, "Photo, take, please." Now, when you ask this question, be sure to show them how to use your camera. Don't expect all Japanese to be gadget whizzes! I certainly am not!

Now let's try the second sentence, "May I take your picture?" If you ever walk down the ancient streets of Kyoto, you may be lucky enough to see some geisha walking around in their beautiful *kimonos* (the traditional Japanese attire) and distinct make-up. You'll be tempted to take a picture of these shy, soft-spoken ladies in front of ancient-looking temples and shrines.

That's when you would say *Shashin o torasete kudasai*. Again, the first word *shashin* means, "photo." This is followed by the object-marker *o*. Up to here, it's the same as the first sentence. The next word *torasete* means, "let me take." To recap, we have *Shashin o torasete*. Literally, this means, "Photo, let me take." Let's take a look at the next word *kudasai*, which means "please." So altogether, we have *Shashin o torasete kudasai*. Literally, this means, "Photo, let me take, please," or "Please let me take your picture."

Now, there may also be times when you want to take a picture with someone. In this case, you could say, "Please let me take a picture with you." In Japanese, that's *Shashin o issho ni torasete kudasai*. The first word *shashin* means "photo." This is followed by the object-marker *o*. Up to here, it's the same as the first sentence. The next words *issho ni* mean "together." This is followed by *torasete*, which means, "let me take." The next word *kudasai* means "please." So altogether, we have *Shashin o issho ni torasete kudasai*. Literally, this means, "Photo, together, let me take, please."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips on Japanese Photo Ops!

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret! You know the cliché about Japanese people being picture freaks. You see it in the movies and on TV all the time. Well, I have to admit, there is a reason for this stereotype: We love taking pictures! Everywhere we go, on every occasion there is, we take pictures to preserve that moment for all of eternity! Get-togethers, parties, events, and pictures of landscapes, too! Nowadays, we mainly use camera-equipped cell phones to take pictures, because we always carry our cell phones anyway. There's also another advantage to taking pictures with cell phones. You can store huge files of pictures in cell phones and show them to people.

Tip #2

I really recommend asking for permission before taking someone's picture, not only because it's polite, but also because you'll get a better expression or pose from the person you're taking a picture of. I've noticed that many Japanese initially act shy when you ask them for a photo, but once you focus your camera on them, they'll give you their brightest smile or their funniest poses, especially to foreign tourists. So don't be shy! You may even make a friend or two out of this opportunity!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #31

Give Me Your Email Address

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

31

KANJI

1. メールアドレスを教えてください。
2. 私のメールアドレスです。
3. 頻繁にメールします。
4. 時々メールします。

KANA

1. めーるあどれすをおしえてください。
2. わたしのめーるあどれすです。
3. ひんばんにめーるします。
4. ときどきめーるします。

ROMANIZATION

1. Mēru adoresu o oshiete kudasai.
2. Watashi no mēru adoresu desu.
3. Hinpan ni mēru shimasu.
4. Tokidoki mēru shimasu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Please give me your email address.
2. This is my email address.
3. I will email often.
4. I will email from time to time.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
携帯のメアド	けいたいのめあど	keitai no meado	cell phone email address

SAMPLE SENTENCES

携帯のメアドを教えてください。
Keitai no meado wo oshiete kudasai.

Please give me your cell phone email address

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "email" is simply called *mēru*, the Japanese pronunciation of the word "mail." And "address" is *adoresu*, the Japanese pronunciation of the word "address." So in Japanese, "email address" is *mēru adoresu*.

The simplest way of asking, "Please give me your email address" is *Mēru adoresu o oshiete kudasai*. The first words *mēru adoresu* mean, "email address," as we covered earlier. This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. *Oshiete kudasai* is a polite way of saying, "Please tell me." So altogether, "Please give me your email address" is *Mēru adoresu o oshiete kudasai*.

Once the person gives you his or her email address, don't forget to thank them by saying *Arigatō gozaimasu*, or "Thank you very much." Then you can offer your own email address by saying *Watashi no mēru adoresu desu*, which means, "This is my email address." Be sure to write your email address clearly, because if they misread one letter, you may never hear from your newfound friends!

And to tell them you'll write them, simply add *Mēru shimasu*, which literally means, "I will do email," but it's implied that you will email them. If you want to commit to emailing often, you would say *Hinpan ni mēru shimasu*. The first phrase *hinpan ni* means "to do often." If you don't want to get their hopes up too high, just promise to email occasionally by saying *Tokidoki mēru shimasu*, which means, "I'll email from time to time."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Japanese Email Tips!

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. As you may have guessed, most Japanese prefer to send and receive emails from their cell phones instead of computers because they can send and check messages on the run. For example, if your train is running late, you can email your friend from your cell phone without having to talk on a crowded train. (Japanese people frown on using cell phones on the train.) And working people are often so busy that the only time they can leisurely check email is on the train or platform during their commute.

For these reasons, Japanese people often exchange cell phone email addresses. A funky word to describe an email address is *meado*, which is short for "mail address." Teenagers and youngsters are always saying *keitai no meado* which is short for "e-mail address from your cell phone." So to say, "Please give me your cell phone email address," you would say *Keitai no meado o oshiete kudasai*.

Tip #2

During rush hour on the trains in Tokyo, you might see a whole row of passengers thumb-typing on their cell phones at two hundred miles per hour! I am always amazed at the sheer number of commuters thumbing away all throughout a thirty-minute train ride! Sometimes, more than seventy percent of the passengers on a train car will be emailing at the same time. And they all look so determined, too! I often wonder if they get "repetitive-thumb syndrome!" On a really crowded train, sometimes I can look over the shoulders of the person in front of me and see the screen. I can see that some are emailing business-related content, while others are sending personal emails using a lot of emoticons.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #32

How Do You Say?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

32

KANJI

1. これは日本語でどう言いますか？
2. []は日本語でどう言いますか？
3. どうもありがとうございます。

KANA

1. これはにほんごでどう言いますか？
2. []はにほんごでどう言いますか？
3. どうもありがとうございます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kore wa nihongo de dō iimasu ka?
2. [] wa nihongo de dō iimasu ka?
3. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.

ENGLISH

1. How do you say it in Japanese?
2. How do you say [] in Japanese?

CONT'D OVER

3. Thank you very much.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
これ	これ	kore	this	noun
は	は	wa	topic marking particle	particle
日本語	にほんご	Nihongo	Japanese	noun
どう	どう	dō	how	interrogative word
言いますか	いいますか	iimasu ka	do you say	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

これは何ですか。 <i>Kore wa nan desu ka.</i> What is this?	あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i> Huh? Is this mine?
今日はクリスマスです。 <i>Kyō wa Kurisumasu desu.</i> Today is Christmas.	日本語、わかりません。 <i>Nihongo, wakarimasen.</i> I don't understand Japanese.
味はどうですか。 <i>Aji wa dō desu ka.</i> How is the taste?	これは日本語でどう言いますか。 <i>Kore wa nihongo de dō īmasu ka.</i> How do you say this in Japanese?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "How do you say this in Japanese?" is *Kore wa nihongo de dō īmasu ka?* The first word *kore* means "this." Then we have the topic-marking particle *wa*. *Nihongo* means "Japanese," and *de* is a particle we use to mean "in," as in "in Japanese." *Dō* means "how." *īmasu ka* is the polite way of asking "how to say." So altogether, you have *Kore wa nihongo de dō īmasu ka?* to mean, "How do you say this in Japanese?"

If you want to say a particular word in English, you can replace *kore* with that word at the beginning of the sentence. For example, to ask, "How do you say 'cold' in Japanese?" you can say, *Cold wa nihongo de dō īmasu ka?* Just remember to add the topic-marking particle *wa* after the English word, and the remaining phrase is the same as in the sentence we covered earlier.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips to Learning New Japanese Words!

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret! I know today's phrase was a bit longer than you had hoped. But there is a quick and dirty way to say the same thing. It goes like this: *Nihongo de wa?* You may have noticed that this is the middle part of the phrase we covered earlier. Literally translated, it means, "This in Japanese?" One important thing to remember with this is the intonation. You have to raise the intonation at the end of the sentence to signal that you're asking a question because the quick and dirty sentence is actually an incomplete one. You don't want them to wait for you to complete the sentence!

Tip #2

After someone tells you a new Japanese word, don't forget to thank them! You can do that by saying *Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu*, which is the super-polite way to say, "Thank you very much." I'm sure they'll understand just how much you appreciate their help!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #33

Write It Down, Please.

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

33

KANJI

1. 書いて下さい。
2. ローマ字で書いて下さい。
3. 英語で書いて下さい。

KANA

1. かいてください。
2. ろーまじでかいてください。
3. えいごでかいてください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kaite kudasai.
2. Rōmaji de kaite kudasai.
3. Eigo de kaite kudasai .

ENGLISH

1. Please write it down.
2. Please write it in romanized letters (alphabet).

CONT'D OVER

3. Please write it in English.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
書く	かく	kaku	to write	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
英語	えいご	Eigo	English (language)	noun
漢字	かんじ	kanji	Chinese characters, kanji	
平仮名	ひらがな	hiragana	A Japanese character script	
カタカナ	かたかな	katakana	A Japanese character script	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

英語で書いてください。 <i>Eigo de kaite kudasai.</i> Please write it down in English.	水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i> Can I have some water, please?
英語がわかりますか。 <i>Eigo ga wakimasu ka.</i> Do you understand English?	漢字は面白いです。 <i>Kanji wa omoshiroi desu.</i> Kanji is interesting.
平仮名を教えてください。 <i>Hiragana wo oshiete kudasai.</i> Please teach me hiragana.	カタカナはわかりません。 <i>Katakana wa wakimasen.</i> I don't know Katakana.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "Please write it down" is *Kaite kudasai*. The first word *kaite* is a form of the verb *kaku*, which means "to write." This is followed by *kudasai*, which is Japanese for "please." So altogether, we have *Kaite kudasai*. Literally, this means, "Write, please."

Now, because the Japanese language uses three types of intricate letters, you may not be able to read all of the characters. In that case, you can ask the person to write the phonetic sounds of Japanese words using the alphabet. Using those romanized words, you can look up the words in the dictionary.

Let's learn how to ask this in Japanese. In Japanese, the alphabet, or romanized letters, is called *rōmaji*. So to ask, "Please write it in *romaji*," you would say *Rōmaji de kaite kudasai*. The first word *rōmaji* means "romanized letters." This is followed by *de*, which is the rough equivalent of the English word "in," as is "in *romaji*."

To recap, we have *rōmaji de*. Literally, this means "in *romaji*." And the rest of the sentence is the same as the earlier one, *Kaite kudasai*, which is "Please write." So together, we have *Rōmaji de kaite kudasai*. Literally, this means, "In *romaji*, please write," or "Please write it in *romaji*."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secrets About the Three Types of Japanese Characters!

Tip #1

In today's Sachiko's Secret, I'll brief you in on Japanese characters. The Japanese language uses three types of characters. The Chinese characters-or *kanji*, as we call them in Japanese-are literally the characters people in China use as well. We adapted several thousand of them from the Chinese and gave them our own readings (pronunciations). The remaining two types of characters-*hiragana* and *katakana*-are unique to Japan. We use *katakana* mainly to write foreign words, such as foreign names. For example, you would write your name in *katakana*. We use *hiragana* for words that cannot be written in *kanji* or *katakana*, such as particles, which are similar to prepositions.

Tip #2

If you want someone to write down their message in English (because their pronunciation wasn't clear enough for you to understand what they were saying), you could use parts of today's phrase. In Japanese, "Please write it down in English" is *Eigo de kaite kudasai*. We've just replaced *rōmaji* with *eigo*, which means "English."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #34

How Do You Read This?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

34

KANJI

1. これはどう読みますか？
2. それはどういう意味ですか？

KANA

1. これはどうよみますか？
2. それはどういういみですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Kore wa dō yomimasu ka?
2. Sore wa dōiu imi desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. How do you read this?
2. What does that mean?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
これ	これ	kore	this	noun

どう	どう	dō	how	interrogative word
読む	よむ	yomu	to read	
それ	それ	sore	that	pronoun
どういう	どういう	dō iu	what kind of	
意味	いみ	imi	meaning, significance	
漢字	かんじ	kanji	Chinese characters, kanji	noun
ひらがな	ひらがな	hiragana	(one set of Japanese character)	
カタカナ	かたかな	katakana	A Japanese character script	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>これは何ですか。 <i>Kore wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is this?</p>	<p>あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>
<p>味はどうですか。 <i>Aji wa dō desu ka.</i></p> <p>How is the taste?</p>	<p>これはどう読みますか。 <i>Kore wa dō yomimasu ka.</i></p> <p>How do you read this?</p>
<p>それは何ですか。 <i>Sore wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is that?</p>	<p>A「どれにしますか」 B「それください」 <i>A:Dore ni shimasu ka. B:Sore kudasai.</i></p> <p>A: What would you like? B: I'll take that.</p>
<p>これはどういう意味ですか。 <i>Kore wa dōiu imi desu ka.</i></p> <p>What does this mean?</p>	<p>意味が分かりません。 <i>Imi ga wakarimasen.</i></p> <p>I don't understand what you mean.</p>

この漢字を覚えてください。

Kono kanji o oboete kudasai.

Please memorize this Kanji.

平仮名を教えてください。

Hiragana wo oshiete kudasai.

Please teach me hiragana.

カタカナはわかりません。

Katakana wa wakarimasen.

I don't know Katakana.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "How do you read this?" is *Kore wa dō yomimasu ka?* The first word *kore* means "this." This is followed by *wa*, the topic-marking particle. *Dō* means "how." *Yomimasu* is the polite way of saying "to read." (The dictionary form of this verb is *yomu*.) *Ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So together, *Kore wa dō yomimasu ka?* literally means, "This, how to read?" or "How do you read this?"

Once you get the reading for a sentence, you can follow up with the question, "What does that mean?" which in Japanese is *Sore wa dōiu imi desu ka?* *Sore* means "it." *Wa* is a topic-marking particle. *Dōiu* means "what kind of," followed by *imi*, which means "meaning." *Desu* is the copula, and *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So together, *Sore wa dōiu imi desu ka?* literally means, "That, what kind of meaning is it?" or "What does that mean?"

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip: Learning More About Japanese Characters!

Tip #1

Today's Sachiko's Secret is actually not a secret at all. But I thought I would review this information with you since we're talking about reading Japanese. As you may know, the Japanese language uses three types of characters. The Chinese characters-or *kanji* (漢字), as we call them-are literally the characters people in China use as well. *Hiragana* (ひらがな) and *katakana* (カタカナ) are unique to Japan. We mainly use *katakana* to write foreign words. We use *hiragana* for words that we cannot write in *kanji* or *katakana*.

All in all, we use a lot of characters! Fifty *hiragana*, fifty *katakana*, and about twenty-five hundred *kanji*. Even for us native speakers, it takes nine years of schooling to learn all these characters. We learn the fifty *hiragana* and fifty *katakana* in the first grade, when we're about six years old. Then we learn a little bit of *kanji* each year until we graduate from junior high school at the age of fifteen. At that age, we should be able to read a newspaper. But until we learn all of the *kanji*, we mix up *hiragana* and ask adults to read *kanji* for us. That's why at parks, postings targeted at children will be written entirely in *hiragana*, or they will have *hiragana* written above the *kanji*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #35

Hotel 1

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

35

KANJI

1. 電力変換機はありますか？

KANA

1. でんりょくへんかんきはありますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Denryokuhenkanki wa arimasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Do you have a power converter?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
電力変換機	でんりょくへんかんき	denryoku henkan ki	power converter	
ドライヤー	ドライヤー	doraiyā	hair dryer	noun
パソコン	ぱそこん	paso-kon	personal computer	
アイロン	あいろん	airon	iron	
インターネット	インターネット	intānetto	internet	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>電力変換機はありますか。 <i>Denryoku henkanki wa arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have a power converter?</p>	<p>ドライヤーはありますか。 <i>Doraiyā wa arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have a hair dryer?</p>
<p>パソコンを使う。 <i>Pasokon o tsukau.</i></p> <p>I'll use a PC.</p>	<p>アイロンはありますか。 <i>Airon wa arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have an iron?</p>
<p>インターネットをしてもいいですか。 <i>Intānetto o shitemo ī desu ka.</i></p> <p>Can I use the internet?</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll introduce phrases for those of you who want to travel light and borrow various gadgets locally while on vacation in Japan. We'll look at asking if a hotel or store has a particular item, so you don't have to drag them from overseas. We'll start with "power converters," or *denryoku henkanki*.

In Japanese, "Do you have power converters?" is *Denryoku henkanki wa arimasu ka?* The first word *denryoku* means "electricity." Let's break down this word and hear it one more time: *denryoku*. This is followed by *henkanki*, which means "converter." In Japanese, we don't distinguish between singular and plural nouns, so regardless of how many, the term for power converters is *denryoku henkanki*. Then comes the topic-marking particle *wa*, followed by *arimasu ka*, which is the polite way of saying "do you have?" So altogether, we have *Denryoku henkanki wa arimasu ka?* Literally, this means, "Power converter, do you have?" or "Do you have a power converter?"

Now, to ask for a different item, we can just replace the words "power converter" with any other word, and the sentence works just fine. Let's try another gadget you might ask for at a hotel—"hair dryer," which in Japanese is simply *doraiyā*, the Japanese pronunciation of the word "dryer." So, "Do you have a hair dryer?" is *Doraiyā wa arimasu ka?*

If you need to iron your shirt for an important meeting or event, add the word "iron" at the top of this sentence. The word for "iron" is also simply pronounced the Japanese way: *airon*. To ask for one, say *Airon wa arimasu ka*.

If you want to check email from your hotel room, you can ask, "Do you have a computer?" In Japan, "computer" is *paso-kon*, which is the abbreviation of the words "personal

computer," pronounced the Japanese way. To ask for it, you would say *Paso-kon wa arimasu ka?* We can assume that computers are Internet accessible, but if you need to be absolutely sure, you could add the words *intā netto*, which is how we pronounce "Internet."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip to Using Electronic Gadgets in Japan!

Tip #1

For Sachiko's Secret, we'll talk electronic gadgets. In Japan, we use 100V power outlets, only a difference of 10V compared with outlets in the US. But you should NEVER plug in equipment designed for 220-240V when you're here. It might damage your precious gadgets. Well, do you really need to bring your stuff? Not really. Decent hotels tend to have hair dryers. Some hotels have Internet-accessible computers, but if they don't, there are plenty of Internet cafes in Tokyo or other metropolitan cities.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #36

Hotel 2

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

36

KANJI

1. ルームサービスはありますか？
2. 寿司はありますか？
3. 天ぷらはありますか？
4. コーヒーはありますか？
5. マッサージはありますか？
6. ランドリーサービスはありますか？

KANA

1. るーむさーびすはありますか？
2. すしはありますか？
3. てんぷらはありますか？
4. こーひーはありますか？
5. まっさーじはありますか？
6. らんどりーさーびすはありますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Rūmusābisu wa arimasu ka?

CONT'D OVER

2. Sushi wa arimasu ka?
3. Tempura wa arimasu ka?
4. Kohī wa arimasu ka?
5. Massāji wa arimasu ka?
6. Randorī sābisu wa arimasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Do you have room service?
2. Do you have sushi?
3. Do you have tempura?
4. Do you have coffee?
5. Do you have massage services?
6. Do you have laundry service?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
ルームサービス	ルームサービス	rūmu sābisu	room service	noun
プロデューサー	ぷろでゅーさー	purodūsā	producer	
スタイリスト	すたいりすと	sutairisuto	stylist	

美容師	びようし	biyōshi	hair stylist	
テレビ	テレビ	terebi	TV	noun
ラジオ	ラジオ	rajio	radio	noun
インターネット	インターネット	Intānetto	Internet	noun
ランドリーサービス	ランドリーサービス	Randorī sābisu	laundry service	noun
マッサージ	まっさーじ	massāji	massage services	
いいえ	いいえ	iie	no	expression
はい	はい	hai	yes, that's right	
アーティスト	あーていすと	ātisuto	artist	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ルームサービスをお願いします。 <i>Rūmusābisu wo o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Room service, please.</p>	<p>彼はプロデューサーです。 <i>Kare wa purodūsā desu.</i></p> <p>He is the producer.</p>
<p>わたしはヘアスタイリストです。 <i>Watashi wa hea sutairisuto desu.</i></p> <p>I'm a hairdresser.</p>	<p>友達は美容師です。 <i>Tomodachi wa biyōshi desu.</i></p> <p>My friend is a hair stylist.</p>
<p>テレビはどこですか。 <i>Terebi wa doko desu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the TV?</p>	<p>ラジオはどこですか。 <i>Rajio wa doko desu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the radio?</p>
<p>インターネットをしてもいいですか。 <i>Intānetto o shitemo ī desu ka.</i></p> <p>Can I use the internet?</p>	<p>ランドリーサービスをお願いします。 <i>Randorīsābisu wo o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>Laundry service, please.</p>

<p>マッサージはありますか。 <i>Massāji wa arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have a massage service?</p>	<p>いいえ、ちがいます。 <i>lie, chigaimasu.</i></p> <p>No, that's wrong.</p>
<p>たなかさんですか。 - はい、そうです。 <i>Tanaka-san desu ka. - Hai, sou desu.</i></p> <p>Are you Mr. Tanaka? - Yes, I am.</p>	<p>僕の彼女はアーティストです。 <i>Boku no kanojo wa ātisuto desu.</i></p> <p>My girlfriend is an artist.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll continue our quest to ask for necessary things at a hotel. In the last lesson, we covered electronic gadgets, such as power converters, hair dryers, and irons. Today, we'll go over services offered at hotels, such as room service, massage, and laundry-service.

In Japanese, we often take foreign words and simply pronounce them to sound like Japanese. And that's what we do with the words "room service," "massage," and "laundry service." We call them *rūmu sābisu*, *massāji*, and *randoī sābisu*. The key is to eliminate strong intonation and any sounds that don't exist in the Japanese language. For example, we don't have the "th," "r," "f," or "v" sounds.

In Japanese, "Do you have room service?" is *Rūmu sābisu wa arimasu ka?* First, we have the word for "room service," which is *rūmu sābisu*. Then comes the topic-marking particle *wa*, followed by *arimasu ka*, which is the polite way of saying "do you have?" So together, we have *Rūmu sābisu wa arimasu ka?* Literally, this means "Room service, do you have?" or "Do you have room service?" The answers to such questions would first be "yes" or "no." *Hai* means "yes," and *ie* means "no." After that, they most likely will tell you which number to call or show you how to place an order.

Now, when ordering various foods and drinks through room service, you can use the same sentence structure to ask if they have the dishes you want. Simply put the name of the food or drink at the beginning of the sentence and add *wa arimasu ka?* Let's try ordering sushi. That would be *Sushi wa arimasu ka?* How about tempura? That's *Tempura wa arimasu ka?* Or would you prefer to just have coffee? You can say *Kohī wa arimasu ka?*

Now, after a long day of sightseeing in Tokyo, you might be exhausted from walking all over the place. Let's try asking for a massage. In Japanese, that would be *Massāji wa arimasu ka?*

After a nice massage, you probably want to wear fresh, clean clothing! So let's ask for

laundry service! "Do you have laundry service?" in Japanese is *Randoī sābisu wa arimasu ka?* *Randoī sābisu* are the words "laundry service" pronounced the Japanese way. There is a word in Japanese for laundry, which is *sentaku*. But when we talk about laundry service within a business establishment, we often just say *randoī sābisu*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip#1 for English Words Done the Japanese Way!

Now for Sachiko's Secret! As I mentioned before, in Japanese we often take foreign words and simply pronounce them to sound like Japanese. Why do we do that? Well, I can think of a number of reasons. One is that when new words pop up in the global community, such as words for new concepts such as the Internet or IP telephony, it's easier just to use the same English word rather than come up with a new Japanese word for it. So often, you'll see technical terms just pronounced the Japanese way. For example, Internet is *intānetto*. Radio is *rajio*. Coffeemaker is *kohī mēkā*. We would pronounce television as *terebijon* but we would usually shorten it to *terebi*. Interesting, eh? Another reason is that people tend to think English or anything Western is cool! So even if there is a Japanese word for it, they would use English instead. For example, "hairstylist" is *biyōshi* in Japanese, but it's considered cool to say *sutairisuto* instead. In fact, we often use English words to describe many professions. Everything becomes a *purodūsā* ("producer") or *āchisuto* ("artist") of this and that.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #37

Post Office 1

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

37

KANJI

1. ニューヨークへ送ります。
2. 葉書をニューヨークへ送ります。

KANA

1. にゅーよーくへおくります。
2. はがきをにゅーよーくへおくります。

ROMANIZATION

1. Nyūyōku e okurimasu.
2. Hagaki o nyūyōku e okurimasu.

ENGLISH

1. I'm sending this to New York.
2. I'm sending a postcard to New York.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
ニューヨーク	ニューヨーク	Nyū Yōku	New York	proper noun

送ります	おくります	okurimasu	will send	
葉書	はがき	hagaki	postcard	
手紙	てがみ	tegami	letter	noun
小包み	こづつみ	kozutsumi	small package	
入浴	にゅうよく	nyūyoku	bathing	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ニューヨークは、一時です。 <i>Nyū Yōku wa ichi-ji desu.</i></p> <p>It's 1:00 in New York.</p>	<p>葉書を友達に送ります。 <i>Hagaki wo tomodachi ni okurimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll send a postcard to my friend.</p>
<p>きれいな葉書ですね。 <i>Kirei na hagaki desu ne.</i></p> <p>It's a beautiful postcard isn't it.</p>	<p>友達に手紙を書きました。 <i>Tomodachi ni tegami o kakimashita.</i></p> <p>I wrote a letter to my friend.</p>
<p>昨日友達に手紙を書きました。 <i>Kinō tomodachi ni tegami o kakimashita.</i></p> <p>Yesterday I wrote a letter to my friend.</p>	<p>小包を東京に送ります。 <i>Kozutsumi wo Tōkyō ni okurimasu.</i></p> <p>I'm sending a small package to Tokyo.</p>
<p>ホテルで入浴する。 <i>Hoteru de nyūyoku suru.</i></p> <p>I'll take a bath at the hotel.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We call the post office in Japan *yūbinkyoku*. The expression we'll go over today is, "I'd like to send this to" and then the desired location. For today's lesson, we'll use New York as a destination.

In Japanese, "I'm sending this to New York" is *Nyūyōku e okurimasu*. The first word *nyūyōku*

is just the Japanese pronunciation of the words "New York." We don't have the "r" sound in Japanese, so it sounds very different. But it does refer to the Big Apple! This is followed by *e*, which is a particle used to indicate destination. So *Nyūyōku e* means "to New York." *Okurimasu* is the polite way of saying "will send." The dictionary form of the verb "to send" is *okuru*.

Altogether, the sentence literally means, "New York, to, will send." As you may have noticed, this sentence doesn't specify who is going to send the package, but it's implied that you will because you are saying the sentence. So *Nyūyōku e okurimasu* is enough to mean "I'm sending this to New York."

Now, we can build this up a bit by adding the words for other things we would like to send, such as postcards, letters, and packages. Let's try "postcard," which in Japanese is *hagaki*. To say, "I'm going to send a postcard to New York," add the object-marking particle *o* after the word *hagaki*. Then we add the sentence we just covered. So that would be *Hagaki o Nyūyōku e okurimasu*.

Let's try sending a *tegami*, which means "letter." Add the object-marking particle *o* after the word *tegami*, and then add the sentence we just covered. So that would be *Tegami wo Nyūyōku e okurimasu*.

And the last word is *kozutsumi*, which means "small package." Use the same sentence structure we just covered and you have *Kozutsumi o Nyūyōku e okurimasu*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secrets for the Japanese Post Office!

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. How do you find a post office in Japan? It's pretty simple. You might have seen the symbol for post office in guidebooks. It's a red logo consisting of two horizontal lines and one vertical line sticking out from the lower horizontal line. So if you have a local map, just look for that symbol. If you need an envelope or box, you can often get them at the post office. Sometimes, they'll even lend you scissors, tape, glue, and whatever else you need. So don't be afraid to go in there unprepared. But I should warn you, the lines can get pretty long, so go early.

Tip #2

To send out a standard-size letter within Japan, you need an 80-yen stamp per envelope. To send a postcard domestically, you'll need a 50-yen stamp. For international mail, it's 70 yen per postcard across the board. And for letters, it would depend on the region and the exact weight of the envelope.

For more information, check the post office web site at: <http://www.post.japanpost.jp/english/index.html>

Oh, and be sure to extend the middle vowel (*ō*) when saying "New York" in Japanese. Because if you don't-and you say *nyūyoku* instead of *nyūyōku*-it sounds like the word for bathing! (入浴)

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #38

Post Office 2

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 3 Cultural Insight

38

KANJI

1. 中身は何ですか？

KANA

1. なかみはなんですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Nakami wa nan desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. What's in the package?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
中身	なかみ	nakami	contents, filling	
何	なん	nan	what	interrogative
服	ふく	fuku	clothes	noun
本	ほん	hon	book	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>A. 「中身は何ですか。」 B. 「本です。」 <i>A. "Nakami wa nan desu ka" B. "Hon desu"</i></p> <p>A: What's in the package? B: A book.</p>	<p>なにがすきですか。 <i>Nani ga suki desu ka.</i></p> <p>What do you like?</p>
<p>何を飲みますか。 <i>Nani o nomimasu ka.</i></p> <p>What would you like to drink?</p>	<p>服を家に送る。 <i>Fuku wo ie ni okuru.</i></p> <p>I'll send clothes home.</p>
<p>本を読んでいます。 <i>hon o yonde imasu.</i></p> <p>I'm reading a book.</p>	<p>この本はとても面白いです。 <i>Kono hon wa totemo omoshiroi desu.</i></p> <p>This book is pretty funny.</p>
<p>この本はいくらですか。 <i>Kono hon wa ikura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much is this book?</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In a previous lesson, we discussed the phrase, "I will send (this) to New York," which was *Nyūyōku e okurimasu*. Again, we can change the destination. Specifically, if you want to say, "I'm sending a package to New York," you would say *Kozutsumi o Nyūyōku e okurimasu*.

When sending a package overseas from Japan, you may be asked, "What's in the package?" That question in Japanese is *Nakami wa nan desu ka?* The first word, *nakami*, means "content." Follow this with the topic-marking particle *wa*. Then comes *nan*, which is a rough way of saying "what." It's originally *nani*, but sometimes it's contracted to *nan* because it's easier to say. *Desu* is the polite way of saying, "is," and *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So together we have *Nakami wa nan desu ka?* Literally, this means, "Content, is what?" or "What is the content?"

To answer this question, simply say the word describing what is inside. If you have books, you say *hon*. If you have clothing, the word is *fuku*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. Today's secret is about the post office. If you've spent too much money during your vacation to Japan, you can use the ATM at a post office to withdraw yen cash with your foreign credit card. Another tip is that post offices have many different windows for various services (mail, the postal savings program, etc.). So once you're inside, make sure you go to the right counter. If you can't tell which window to go to, ask someone who works there. The simplest way is to point to the letter or package you have and ask, "*Doko?*" (That means, "Where?") Hopefully, they'll direct you to the right window. Good luck!

Tip#2

The business hours for post offices differ, depending on the office. Typically, they're open 9:00 AM to 5:00 PM on weekdays. Some offices are open until 7:00 PM. Some are open on Saturdays or Sundays between 9:00 AM and 3:00 PM or 5:00 PM. You will probably see a note on or near the door about business hours, so be sure to check when you walk past a local post office.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #39

Foreign Exchange

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

39

KANJI

1. 米ドルを円に替えたいです。
2. カナダドルを円に替えたいです。
3. オーストラリアドルを円に替えたいです。
4. ユーロを円に替えたいです。

KANA

1. べいどるをえんにかえたいです。
2. かなだどるをえんにかえたいです。
3. おおすとらりあどるをえんにかえたいです。
4. ゆうろをえんにかえたいです。

ROMANIZATION

1. Bei doru o en ni kaetai desu.
2. Canada doru o en ni kaetai desu.
3. Ōsutoraria doru o en ni kaetai desu.
4. Yūro o en ni kaetai desu.

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. I'd like to change US dollars into yen.
2. I'd like to change Canadian dollars into yen.
3. I'd like to change Australian dollars into yen.
4. I'd like to change Euros into yen.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
米ドル	べいどる	bei doru	US dollars	
円	えん	en	yen	suffix
替えたい	かえたい	kaetai	want to change	
カナダドル	かなだどる	Canada doru	Canadian dollars	
オーストラリアドル	おおすとりあどる	Ōsutoraria doru	Australian dollars	
ユーロ	ユーロ	Yūro	Euro	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>米ドルを円に替えたいです。 <i>Bei doru wo en ni kaetai desu.</i></p> <p>I'd like to change US dollars into yen</p>	<p>1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many yen is it to one dollar?</p>
<p>米ドルを円に替えたいです。 <i>Bei doru wo en ni kaetai desu.</i></p> <p>I'd like to change US dollars into yen</p>	<p>カナダドルをオーストラリアドルに替えたいです。 <i>Kanada doru wo Ōsutoraria doru ni kaetai desu.</i></p> <p>I'd like to change Canadian dollars into Australian dollars.</p>

<p>オーストラリアドルはいくらですか？ <i>Ōsutoraria doru wa ikura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much is the Australian dollar?</p>	<p>ユーロを円に替えたいです。 <i>Yūro wo en ni kaetai desu.</i></p> <p>I'd like to change Euro into yen.</p>
--	--

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

We pronounce the Japanese currency "yen" in English (with an emphasis on the "y" sound), but in Japanese we pronounce it "en." It's much lighter sounding, like many words in Japanese.

First, let's go over where we can exchange money. Obviously, you can go to any bank or to a foreign exchange office in the airport. Occasionally, you will see foreign exchange windows in the middle of a massive shopping mall. Today, we'll teach you a phrase that you can use in any kind of situation. We'll start with the phrase, "I'd like to change US dollars into yen," so that you can use this sentence both when asking for a place that can exchange money and for actually getting the money exchanged. Kill two birds with one stone, that's what I love to do!

In Japanese, "I'd like to change US dollars into yen" is *Bei doru o en ni kaetai desu*. The first word *bei doru* means "US dollar." They would also understand if you said *American doru*. This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. The next word *en* is, as we covered earlier, "yen." *Ni* is the particle often used to mean "into." So to recap, we have *Bei doru o en ni*, which literally means "US dollars, yen, into."

Let's take a look at the next word, *kaetai*, which means "want to change." The dictionary form of the verb "to change" is *kaeru*. The last word, *desu*, is a copula. So altogether, we have *Bei doru o en ni kaetai desu*. Literally this means, "US dollar, yen, into, want to change" or "I would like to change US dollars into yen."

Now to exchange a different currency into the yen, simply change the first word. For the Canadian dollar, say *Canada doru o en ni kaetai desu*. To exchange the Australian dollar, you can say, *Ōsutoraria doru o en ni kaetai desu*. For the Euro, say *Yūro o en ni kaetai desu*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip#1 for Traveling in Japan

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. In case you can't find a place that exchanges foreign

currency, you can get yen cash with a foreign credit card at a post office ATM. Pretty useful, eh? But remember, post offices are generally only open weekdays from 9 AM until 5 or 7 PM, depending on the location.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #40

Buying a Telephone Card

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

40

KANJI

1. 千円のテレカを下さい。
2. 五千円のテレカを下さい。

KANA

1. せんえんのてれかをください。
2. ごせんえんのてれかをください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Sen-en no tereka o kudasai.
2. Go-sen-en no tereka o kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. Please give me a 1,000-yen telephone card.
2. Please give me a 5,000-yen telephone card.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
千	せん	sen	thousand	noun

五千	ごせん	go sen	five thousand	noun
円	えん	en	yen	
テレカ	てれか	tereka	telephone card	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

千円のスイカを下さい。 <i>Sen-en no suika o kudasai.</i> Can I have a one thousand yen Suica card, please.	A.「これはいくらですか。」 B.「五千円です。」 <i>A.Kore wa ikura desu ka. B.Go sen-en desu.</i> A: How much is this? B: It's five thousand yen.
1ドルは、何円ですか。 <i>Ichi-doru wa nan-en desu ka.</i> How many yen is it to one dollar?	千円のテレカをください。 <i>Sen-en no tereka wo kudasai.</i> Can I have a one thousand yen telephone card, please?
水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i> Can I have some water, please?	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll go over phrases concerning telephone usage in Japan. We'll go over renting cell phones in another lesson, so today we'll focus on using public pay phones and hotel phones.

As you may have guessed, everyone and his dog have a cell phone in Japan. Even elementary school kids, because their parents are worried about their kids' safety. And since so many people have cell phones, public phones are disappearing every day! I remember the days when public phones were lined up by the dozens outside Shibuya Station-the updated ones that accept prepaid telephone cards and make international phone calls. But since entering the 21st century, the number of public phones has

continued to decrease. But don't worry; we still have pay phones at train stations, hospitals, department stores, and other commercial facilities. And you can still buy prepaid telephone cards with values of 500 yen, 1,000 yen, or more from vending machines and at little shops within the stations.

So let's go over how to ask for telephone cards. "Telephone cards" in Japanese is *terefonkādo* or *tereka* for short. Now to ask for a 1,000-yen telephone card, simply say *Sen-en no tereka o kudasai*. Let's break down this sentence word by word. *Sen-en* means "a thousand yen." *No* is a particle we use to describe possession. *Tereka* is short for "telephone card." So, to recap up to here, we have *sen en no tereka*, which literally means "one thousand yen, of, telephone card."

Let's go over the rest of the sentence. *O* is an object-marking particle, and the last word *kudasai* means, "please give me." So, *sen-en no tereka o kudasai* literally means, "one thousand yen, of, telephone card, please give me." For five thousand yen cards, you can say *go sen-en* instead of *sen-en* and repeat the rest of the sentence. To review numbers over ten, check the lesson on currency and high numbers.

A telephone card is really easy to use. Simply put it into the slot in the upper half of the pay phone and dial the number. While you're talking, the remaining value of the card will show up on an electric screen in the middle of the phone. When you hang up, the card will automatically shoot out from the bottom of the pay phone. Don't forget to take it with you on your way out!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip #1 - Have You Seen These Beautiful Japanese Cards?

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. This is going to tell you how old I am. (Yikes!) I remember when telephone cards first came out in the 1980s and everyone considered them revolutionary! This meant we no longer had to carry around heavy chunks of change, especially the 10-yen coins needed for a three-minute call through a public pay phone. If you didn't have a 10-yen coin, you had to drop a 100-yen coin in the phone, and you couldn't get any remaining change back!

That problem flew out the window with prepaid telephone cards! Telephone cards were lightweight and eliminated the risk of losing money. And they came in such a large variety of designs, they were fun to collect. My favorites were the ones with Mt. Fuji on a clear day, or a scenic night view from the top of a mountain in Nara. It seemed like every company was making telephone cards to market their products. Railway companies printed photos of local sights and scenery. Entertainment companies printed photos of their top actors and actresses. Some cards were sold at more than the face value of 500 yen because of the design. There were even hard-core *tereka* collectors! Telephone cards are no longer the rage and they may be difficult to get, but if you get a chance, look around. You might find one you really like. And

if you have a friend in Japan, ask that person to give you unused telephone cards. Chances are, that friend will have a cell phone and have no use for telephone cards anymore! I certainly have telephone cards stacked up in my drawers collecting dust!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #41

Admission - One Adult, Please.

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

41

KANJI

1. 大人二名。
2. 子供三名。

KANA

1. おとなにめい。
2. こどもさんめい。

ROMANIZATION

1. Otona ni mei.
2. Kodomo san mei.

ENGLISH

1. Two adults.
2. Three children.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
大人	おとな	otona	adult	noun

子供	こども	kodomo	child, children
名	めい	mei	counter for people
全国共通	ぜんこくきょう つう	zenkoku kyōtsū	commonly used nationwide
吹き替え	ふきかえ	fukikae	dubbed
字幕	じまく	jimaku	subtitles
シニア	しにあ	shinia	senior
高校生	こうこうせい	kōkōsei	high school student
中学生	ちゅうがくせい	chūgakusei	junior high school student

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>二十歳です。大人になりました。 <i>Hatachi desu. Otona ni narimashita.</i></p> <p>I turned twenty. I'm an adult now.</p>	<p>これは、私の子供です。 <i>Kore wa watashi no kodomo desu.</i></p> <p>This is my child.</p>
<p>何名ですか。 <i>Nan-mei desu ka.</i></p> <p>How many people in your party?</p>	<p>この切符は全国共通です。 <i>Kono kippu wa zenkokukyōtsū desu.</i></p> <p>This ticket can be used nationwide.</p>
<p>吹き替え映画を見る。 <i>Fukikae eiga wo miru.</i></p> <p>I watch a dubbed movie.</p>	<p>字幕なしで映画を見る。 <i>Jimaku nashi de eiga wo miru.</i></p> <p>I watch movies without subtitles.</p>
<p>シニア四名、下さい。 <i>Shinia yon-mei kudasai.</i></p> <p>Four senior tickets, please.</p>	<p>高校生になった。 <i>Kōkōsei ni natta.</i></p> <p>I became a high school student.</p>

私の娘は中学生です。

Watashi no musume wa chūgakusei desu.

My daughter is a junior high school student.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll go over paying admission to get into commercial facilities. This will be very helpful during your trip to Japan because many facilities, including theme parks, museums, movie theaters, and even some public parks (like Shinjuku Gyoen), charge admission fees.

When you walk up to the admission counter, just tell them how many adults and children there are in your party. As an example, we'll use "two adults, three children."

In Japanese, "adult" is *otona*, and child is *kodomo*. And the numbers one to ten are *ichi, ni, san, shi, go, roku, nana, hachi, kyū, jū*. (For a review of the numbers one to ten, check out Lesson 16.) Now, when counting people, you need to put a people counter after the numbers. There are several people counters, so today we'll use a counter that we introduced in our restaurant lesson. The people counter we used then was *mei*. Just put a number before it. One person would be *ichi mei*, two people would be *ni mei*, three people would be *san mei*. So, two adults would be *otona ni mei*. Literally, that means "adults two." For "three children," you would say *kodomo san mei*. Let's practice. What if you and your spouse are traveling with your parents? How would you say "four adults" in Japanese? That's right! *Otona yon mei*.

Sometimes there are separate rates for seniors, as well as for junior and high school students, so we'll cover that as well. There are many ways of saying "senior," but the easiest one and the most common one used in situations such as this is *shinia*, which is just a Japanese pronunciation of the English word "senior." Typically, the word *shinia* refers to people over age sixty or sixty-five. The Japanese word for junior high school student is *chūgakusei*, and the word for senior high school student is *kōkōsei*.

After you say the number of people in your party, the receptionist will probably tell you how much to pay. To understand the answer, be sure to check out Lesson 19 on currency and higher numbers.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip #1 for Finding Cheap Japanese Movie Tickets!

In today's Sachiko's Secret, we'll go over how to get cheap movie tickets. If you just walk into a theater and buy tickets straight from the counter, they'll charge 1,800 yen per adult. That's more than 18 dollars! It's really expensive. They'll also charge about 1,200 yen for seniors over sixty, and between 1,000 yen and 1,500 yen for students.

But there are ways to get cheaper tickets. One way is to go on discount days. Each theater has its own rules, so you have to check with each one. For example, some theaters let women in for 1,000 yen on Wednesdays. Others have a 1,000-yen discount rate once a month.

Another way is to buy discount tickets at a so-called ticket center, which you can find at major train stations such as Shinjuku. They're typically tiny little closet-space stores with lots of movie posters and movie tickets displayed in the window. The ticket price will depend on the movie and on when you buy it. Typically, they would be about 1,200 yen or 1,300 yen per adult. But sometimes, if the movie has been out for a while, you can get one for as cheap as 800 yen. To buy these tickets, just say the movie title and the sentence we learned today. For example, "Two adults for Spiderman" would be *Supaidāman otona ni mei*. Now be careful. You can only use some tickets in designated theaters. If that designated theater is in the neighborhood, great. If not, you want to ask for tickets that you can use in any theater nationwide. Just ask for *zenkoku kyōtsū*, which means, "used commonly nationwide."

Once you get the discount tickets, you can walk past the ticket sales window at the theater and go in where they rip your ticket in half. But you'll still have to line up outside the theater to get good seats. With popular movies, you want to get in line at least half an hour before showtime. Oh, and make sure you don't get into the version dubbed over in Japanese. Those are called *fukikae* or *fukikaeban*. Some theaters will show *fukikae* versions of foreign movies once a day. So make sure the show you're lining up for is the subtitled version, which is called *jimaku* or *jimakuban*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #42

Renting Cell Phones

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

42

KANJI

1. 携帯を借りたいです。
2. どの機種が欲しいですか？
3. 通話時間を追加して下さい。
4. 残りの通話時間は10分。
5. 充電器を下さい。

KANA

1. けいたいをかりたいです。
2. どのきしゅがほしいですか？
3. つうわじかんをついかしてください。
4. のこりのつうわじかんはじゅっぷん。
5. じゅうでんきをください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Keitai o karitai desu.
2. Dono kishu ga hoshii desu ka?
3. Tsūwa jikan o tsuika shite kudasai.

CONT'D OVER

4. Nokori no tsūwa jikan wa ju-ppun.
5. Jūdenki o kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. I'd like to rent a cell phone.
2. Which model would you like?
3. Please add minutes.
4. You have ten minutes left on your phone.
5. Please give me a charger.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
携帯電話	けいたいでんわ	keitai denwa	cell phone, mobile phone	noun
十分	じゅっぷん	juppun	ten minutes	
残り	のこり	nokori	remaining	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
追加	ついか	tsuika	addition	
通話時間	つうわじかん	tsūwa jikan	minutes on a phone	
欲しい	ほしい	hoshī	want, to want	i-adjective

機種	きしゅ	kishu	model
どの+ (名詞)	どの	dono	which + (noun)
借りたい	かりたい	karitai	want to rent
充電器	じゅうでんき	jūdenki	charger

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>あれはわたしの携帯電話です。 <i>Are wa watashi no keitai denwa desu.</i></p> <p>That's my cellular phone.</p>	<p>家から駅まで十分くらいです。 <i>Ie kara eki made juppun kurai desu.</i></p> <p>It's about ten minutes from my house to the station.</p>
<p>通話時間の残りは1分です。 <i>Tsūwa jikan no nokori wa ippun desu.</i></p> <p>I have 1 minute remaining to call.</p>	<p>水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have some water, please?</p>
<p>通話時間を追加してください。 <i>Tsūwa jikan o tsuika shite kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please add minutes.</p>	<p>通話時間を追加してください。 <i>Tsūwa jikan o tsuika shite kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please add minutes.</p>
<p>お金が欲しいです。 <i>O-kane ga hoshī desu.</i></p> <p>I want money.</p>	<p>この機種が欲しいです。 <i>Kono kishu ga hoshī desu.</i></p> <p>I'd like this model.</p>
<p>どの機種が欲しいですか。 <i>Dono kishu ga hoshī desu ka?</i></p> <p>Which model would you like?</p>	<p>携帯を借りたいです。 <i>Keitai wo karitai desu.</i></p> <p>I'd like to rent a cell phone.</p>
<p>充電器を下さい。 <i>Jūdenki o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please give me a charger.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

If you want to rent a cell phone, you can do so at the airport or at a cell phone shop like au, NTT Docomo, or Softbank. When renting a cell phone at the airport, you may need to make a reservation in advance, so make sure you check online before your trip to Japan. Typically, you would prepay for a certain number of minutes. And when you've used them up, you would go to the store again to prepay for more minutes. Or you may just sign up for a three- or five-day package at a fixed price. Depending on the service, they might charge you for the overtime minutes when you return the phone. There are tons of different services out there. The information is available online in English, so check them out and compare prices!

Either way, let's go over the phrases you need to say when renting a cell phone. "Cell phone" in Japanese is *keitai denwa*. *Keitai* means "portable," and *denwa* means "phone," so together, they mean "mobile phone" or "cell phone." But we often simply shorten the term to *keitai*. So let's first say, "I'd like to rent a cell phone," which is *Keitai o karitai desu*. The first word *keitai* is short for "cell phone." *O* is the object-marking particle. *Karitai* means, "want to rent," and *desu* is the copula. Altogether, *Keitai o karitai desu* means, "I'd like to rent a cell phone." We can use this sentence for two purposes: telling someone that you need a cell phone so they can direct you to the right place, and when you get to the store to rent a phone.

Now let's go over some key phrases you'll need to know when renting a phone. When you first ask for a rental, they will probably ask you what type of handset you'd like. *Kishu* is the word they will use to refer to handset models. Most likely, they'll ask *Dono kishu ga hoshī desu ka?* This means, "Which model would you like?" You can respond by simply pointing to the ones they show you.

When you've used up your minutes, you simply go back to the same chain of stores you rented from and pay for more. To say, "Please add minutes," you can say *Tsūwa jikan o tsuika shite kudasai*. In the phrase *tsūwa jikan*, *tsūwa* means, "to talk." *Tsūwa jikan* means "the minutes on your cell phone." *O* is an object-marking particle, *tsuika* means "to add," and *shite kudasai* means "please do." So altogether, "Please add minutes" would be *Tsūwa jikan o tsuika shite kudasai*. Literally, this means, "Minutes, add, please."

At this point, they may tell you how many minutes you have left on your cell phone. In Japanese, *nokori no tsūwa jikan* refers to "the minutes you have left." So if you have ten minutes left on your phone, they'll say *Nokori no tsūwa jikan wa juppun*. *Juppun* means "ten minutes."

And lastly, if you want to get a phone charger, they're called *jūdenki*. To ask for one, say *Jūdenki o kudasai*, which means, "Please give me a charger."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip #1 for Japanese Cell Phone Etiquette

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. I don't mean to preach, but let's go over some basic manners when we use cell phones in public. I'm sure the rules are no different from where you are now, but just in case. On the trains, talking on cell phones is considered rude and unacceptable, but it's okay to simply check messages or read and send emails. As long as you're not making noise, it's fine. At offices, typically we keep it on vibrator mode so that the ringer sound doesn't annoy our colleagues. And when we do answer it, we step outside to the corridor or the elevator hall to talk so we don't disturb our colleagues inside the office. At a restaurant or café, talking on cell phones is discouraged. But in all these cases, it's fairly okay to whisper into the phone, "Can't talk now. Call you later!" And in movie theaters or any other kind of theater, turn your cell phone off! No exceptions here!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #43

English Info Guide

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

43

KANJI

1. 英語のガイドはありますか？
2. スペイン語のガイドはありますか？
3. 英語のメニューはありますか？

KANA

1. えいごのがいどはありますか？
2. すぺいんごのがいどはありますか？
3. えいごのめにゅーはありますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Eigo no gaido wa arimasu ka?
2. Supeingo no gaido wa arimasu ka?
3. Eigo no menyū wa arimasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Do you have an English information guide?
2. Do you have a Spanish information guide?

CONT'D OVER

3. Do you have an English menu?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
英語	えいご	Eigo	English (language)	noun
ガイド	が이드	gaido	tour guide, information guide	
あります	あります	arimasu	to exist; masu form	
スペイン語	スペインご	Supein-go	Spanish	noun
中国語	ちゅうごくご	chūgoku-go	Chinese language	noun
韓国語	かんこくご	kankokugo	Korean language	
メニュー	メニュー	menyū	menu	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>英語がわかりますか。 <i>Eigo ga wakarimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you understand English?</p>	<p>英語のガイドはありますか。 <i>Eigo no gaido wa arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have an English information guide?</p>
<p>アレルギーがあります。 <i>Arerugī ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have allergies.</p>	<p>スペイン語のガイドありますか。 <i>Supein-go no gaido arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have a Spanish information guide?</p>
<p>私は中国語を話します。 <i>Watashi wa chūgokugo o hanashimasu.</i></p> <p>I speak Chinese.</p>	<p>韓国語を話せますか。 <i>Kankokugo wo hanasemasu ka.</i></p> <p>Can you speak Korean?</p>

メニューをください。
menyū o kudasai.

Can I have a menu?

英語のメニューを下さい。
Eigo no menyū o kudasai.

Can you give me an English menu?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll introduce you to a crucial phrase you'll need to learn the history and culture behind all the great sights of Japan. Learning about the history and cultural significance of places you visit can be just as rewarding as seeing them. So we're going to cover the question, "Do you have an English information guide?"

In Japanese, "Do you have an English information guide?" is *Eigo no gaido wa arimasu ka?* The first word *eigo* means "English." This is followed by *no*, a particle that indicates possession. The next word *gaido* is simply the Japanese pronunciation of the word "guide." So, to recap, we have *eigo no gaido*. Literally, this means "English guidebook." The next word *wa* is a topic-marking particle. *Arimasu* is the polite way of saying "there is." The last particle *ka* turns a sentence into an interrogative.

To ask for a different language, we can replace the word for "English" with any other word for a language and it works just fine. Let's try "Spanish," which in Japanese is *supeingo*. So in Japanese, "Do you have a Spanish information guide?" is *Supeingo no gaido wa arimasu ka?* The only thing that changes is the first word, which indicates the language.

Surprisingly, we don't see many Spanish guidebooks or signs in Japan. What we do see, especially at stations and tourist attractions in Tokyo, are signs in Chinese and Korean. For reference, "Chinese" is *chūgokugo* in Japanese. "Korean" is *kankokugo*. So to request a pamphlet in Chinese or Korean, simply replace the word *eigo* with *chūgokugo* or *kankokugo*. So the sentence, "Do you have a Chinese info guide?" would be *Chūgokugo no gaido wa arimasu ka?*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret to Fine Dining in Japan!

Now for Sachiko's Secret. Most historic or modern sightseeing places have little notes and pamphlets in English for foreign tourists. So you may not need to ask the question we covered

in today's lesson. But there is a similar question you may have to ask at a restaurant, and that is, "Do you have an English menu?" In Japanese, that would be *Eigo no menyū wa arimasu ka?* Simply replace the word *gaido* with *menyū* the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "menu."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #44

How Do You Eat This?

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

44

KANJI

1. 食べ方は？
2. 醤油につける。
3. つゆにつける。
4. マヨネーズをつける。
5. ソースをかける。

KANA

1. たべかたは？
2. しょうゆにつける。
3. つゆにつける。
4. まよねーずをつける。
5. そーすをかける。

ROMANIZATION

1. Tabekata wa?
2. Shōyu ni tsukeru.
3. Tsuyu ni tsukeru.

CONT'D OVER

4. Mayonēzu o tsukeru.
5. Sōsu o kakeru.

ENGLISH

1. How do you eat this?
2. Dip it in soy sauce.
3. Dip it in the broth.
4. Put mayonnaise on it.
5. Pour sauce on it.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
食べ方	たべかた	tabekata	how to eat	
ソース	ソース	sōsu	sauce	noun
胡椒	こしょう	koshō	pepper	noun
塩	しお	shio	salt	noun
マスタード	マスタード	masutādo	mustard	noun
ケチャップ	ケチャップ	kechappu	ketchup	noun
マヨネーズ	まよねーず	mayonēzu	mayonnaise	
つゆ	つゆ	tsuyu	broth	noun
つける	つける	tsukeru	to stick, to dip	verb

醤油	しょうゆ	shōyu	soy sauce	noun
かける	かける	kakeru	pour	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>この食べ方を教えてください。 <i>Kono tabekata o oshiete kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please teach me how to eat this.</p>	<p>ソースはどこにありますか？ <i>Sōsu wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the sauce?</p>
<p>胡椒を取って下さい。 <i>Koshō wo totte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Could you pass me the pepper?</p>	<p>これは、砂糖ですか。塩ですか。 <i>Kore wa satō desu ka. Shio desu ka.</i></p> <p>"Is this sugar or salt?"</p>
<p>マスタードはいくらですか。 <i>Masutādo wa ikura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much is the mustard?</p>	<p>ケチャップをホットドッグにつける。 <i>Kechappu wo hottodotgu ni tsukeru.</i></p> <p>I put ketchup onto a hotdog.</p>
<p>マヨネーズが大好きです。 <i>Mayonēzu ga daisuki desu.</i></p> <p>I love mayonnaise.</p>	<p>おそばにはつゆが必要です。 <i>O-osoba niwa tsuyu ga hitsuyō desu.</i></p> <p>You need broth for buckwheat noodles.</p>
<p>お刺身に醤油をつける。 <i>O-sashimi ni shōyu wo tsukeru.</i></p> <p>I dip the sashimi into soy sauce.</p>	<p>醤油をとってください。 <i>Shōyu o totte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Could you pass me the soy sauce?</p>
<p>お好み焼きにソースをかける。 <i>Okonomiyaki ni sōsu wo kakeru.</i></p> <p>I pour sauce on top of the okonomiyaki.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll go over how to ask, "How do you eat this?" This may sound like a

peculiar question, but believe it or not, there may be times when you're at a high-end Japanese restaurant, and-with six different sauces and seven different dishes-you have no idea what items you're supposed to dip into what.

First, let's go over the basic question, "How do you eat this?" The simplest and shortest way to ask this is to say *Tabekata wa?* The first word *tabekata* means "way to eat." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. So literally it means, "Way to eat, is?" It's actually an incomplete sentence, but it will do the trick. Just remember to raise the intonation at the end of the sentence to show that it's an interrogative.

There could be a variety of answers to this question. But let's cover the basics. First, they might tell you to dip the food in a liquid. So let's try "Dip it in soy sauce," which would be *Shōyu ni tsukeru*. The first word *shōyu* is "soy sauce." *Ni* is a particle roughly translated as "into." *Tsukeru* means "dip into." So all together, *Shōyu ni tsukeru* means "Dip into soy sauce." "Dip it in the broth" would be *Tsuyu ni tsukeru*. *Tsuyu* is like a Japanese-style broth used to dip soba or udon noodles into.

Another type of sentence you may hear is, "Add XXX onto the food." Let's start with, "Put mayonnaise onto it," like you might with tempura. Yeah, mustard-flavored mayonnaise on shrimp tempura is the best! You'll have to try it! In Japanese, "Put mayonnaise onto it" would be *Mayonēzu o tsukeru*. *Mayonēzu* is simply the Japanese translation of the English word "mayonnaise." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o* and by the word *tsukeru*, which came up in the previous sentence. When *tsukeru* is followed by the particle *o*, we would translate the phrase as "add onto it."

So remember, *ni tsukeru* is "dip into" and *o tsukeru* is "Put XXX on it." Don't worry too much; you'll be able to tell what you're supposed to do just by paying attention to your surroundings. If you see a little dish with soy sauce in it, you would obviously dip food into it. If you saw mayonnaise in a bottle, you wouldn't dip food into the bottle, right? You would put mayonnaise on the food. So don't worry about the little stuff.

Now let's go over some other condiments that you may use. "Ketchup" is simply *kechappu*, and "mustard" is simply *masutādo*. And it's *shio* for "salt," and *koshō* for "pepper."

Let's go over another useful sentence structure. The phrase "Pour sauce on it" is *Sōsu o kakeru*. The first word *sōsu* means "sauce." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o* and the verb *kakeru*, which means to "pour on." So together, it's *Sōsu o kakeru* to mean, "Pour sauce on it."

Hopefully, today's lesson will help you make the most out of your exquisite dining experience in Japan. And remember, when all else fails, just imitate everyone else! Monkey see, monkey do! It always works!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip #1 for Japanese Table Manners

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret! We'll go over some Japanese-style table manners in this section. Remember how your mother used to tell you never to slurp your pasta or noodles? Well in Japan, you HAVE TO! It's actually considered rude or weird NOT to slurp on rāmen, soba, or udon noodles both at home and in public! At first, you might be hesitant. But you have to do it! Do it really long and loud! Like this! Every single noodle! And if you go to a high-end rāmen noodle shop, make sure you pick up the bowl and drink every drop of the soup. It's considered rude not to finish it all! But be careful, there's a lot of sodium in rāmen, so you don't want to eat this every day. Also, in traditional Japanese-style restaurants you'll see lots of little dishes. Go ahead and pick them up. It's okay. And with rice bowls, noodle bowls, and miso soup bowls, go ahead and pick them up, bring them up to your lips, and drink directly from them. I know this goes against the table manners of some cultures, but in Japan, it's okay. So take advantage! Make this the noodle-slurping adventure of your life!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #45

I'm a Vegetarian

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 3 Romanization
- 3 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

45

KANJI

1. 私はベジタリアンです。
2. 肉は食べません。
3. 卵は食べません。
4. 魚は食べません。
5. 肉は入っていますか？
6. 魚は入っていますか？
7. 卵は入っていますか？
8. 乳製品は食べません。

KANA

1. わたしはべじたりあんです。
2. にくはたべません。
3. たまごはたべません。
4. さかなはたべません。
5. にくははいっていますか？
6. さかなははいっていますか？

CONT'D OVER

7. たまごははいていますか？
8. にゅうせいひんはたべません。

ROMANIZATION

1. Watashi wa bejitarian desu.
2. Niku wa tabemasen.
3. Tamago wa tabemasen.
4. Sakana wa tabemasen.
5. Niku wa haitte imasu ka?
6. Sakana wa haitte imasu ka?
7. Tamago wa haitte imasu ka?
8. Nyūseihin wa tabemasen.

ENGLISH

1. I'm a vegetarian.
2. I don't eat meat.
3. I don't eat eggs.

CONT'D OVER

4. I don't eat fish.
5. Does this contain meat?
6. Does it contain fish?
7. Does it contain eggs?
8. I don't eat dairy products.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
私	わたし	watashi	I, me	
ベジタリアン	ベジタリアン	bejitarian	vegetarian	
菜食主義者	さいしょくしゅぎしゃ	saishoku shugi sha	vegetarian	
肉	にく	niku	meat	noun
食べません	たべません	tabemasen	don't eat (polite form)	
卵	たまご	tamago	eggs	
魚	さかな	sakana	fish	noun
入っています	はいっています	haitteimasu	contains (polite form)	
乳製品	にゅうせいひん	nyūseihin	dairy products	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>私は日本人です。 <i>Watashi wa nihonjin desu.</i></p> <p>I'm Japanese.</p>	<p>私はベジタリアンです。 <i>Watashi wa bejitarian desu.</i></p> <p>I'm a vegetarian.</p>
<p>私は菜食主義者です。 <i>Watashi wa saishokushugisha desu.</i></p> <p>I am a vegetarian.</p>	<p>これは肉です。 <i>Kore wa niku desu.</i></p> <p>This is meat.</p>
<p>肉は食べません。魚は食べます。 <i>Niku wa tabemasen. Sakana wa tabemasu.</i></p> <p>I don't eat meat. I eat fish.</p>	<p>卵は好きじゃありません。 <i>Tamago wa suki ja arimasen.</i></p> <p>I don't like eggs.</p>
<p>魚は好きです。 <i>Sakana wa suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like fish.</p>	<p>乳製品は入っていますか。 <i>Nyūseihin wa haitte imasu ka.</i></p> <p>Does it contain a dairy product?</p>
<p>牛乳とチーズは乳製品です。 <i>Gyūnyū to chīzu wa nyūseihin desu.</i></p> <p>Milk and cheese are dairy products.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Today's lesson is for all you vegetarians out there! We're going to cover the phrase, "I'm a vegetarian" and some crucial words you need to enjoy dining in Japan.

In Japanese, the word "vegetarian" is *bejitarian*, which is the English word just pronounced the Japanese way. Most young people will understand this word, but some elderly may not. So you may want to add the traditional Japanese word for "vegetarian," which is *saishoku shugi sha*. *Saishoku* literally means, "eat vegetables," *shugi* is "principle," and *sha* means "person." Literally translated, *saishoku shugi sha* means "a person who believes in eating vegetables."

So let's try saying, "I'm a vegetarian." In Japanese, that would be *Watashi wa bejitarian desu*. The first word *watashi* means, "I." This is followed by the topic-marking particle "wa." And the next word *bejitarian* means, "vegetarian." *Desu* is simply a copula. So altogether, we have *Watashi wa bejitarian desu*. Literally, this means, "I am a vegetarian."

Now, since there are different degrees of vegetarianism, you may need to specify what you don't eat. Also, some people may not understand the concept of vegetarianism at all. It's not very common in Japan. So, we'll go over some key words that might come in handy.

First, let's try the basic, "I don't eat meat." In Japanese, that would be *Niku wa tabemasen*. The first word *niku* means, "meat." This covers all types of meat. This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. And the next word *tabemasen* is the polite way of saying, "don't eat." Now, Japanese sentences don't always have to have subjects, so when you say *Niku wa tabemasen* people will assume you are talking about yourself. So altogether, we have *Niku wa tabemasen* to mean, "I don't eat meat."

To say you don't eat other things, simply replace the word *niku* with other words. Let's try eggs, which we call *tamago* in Japanese. If you don't eat eggs, simply say *Tamago wa tabemasen*. If you don't eat dairy products, you can say *Nyūseihin wa tabemasen*. If you don't eat fish, say *Sakana wa tabemasen*.

Now, if you want to ask people if a certain food contains meat, you can say, *Niku wa haitte imasu ka?* The first word *niku* is "meat." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. The last phrase *haitte imasu ka* means, "does it contain?" So altogether, it's *Niku wa haitte imasu ka?* "Does it contain fish?" would be *Sakana wa haitte imasu ka?* "Does it contain eggs?" is *Tamago wa haitte imasu ka?*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip #1 On Vegetarianism in Tokyo!

In today's Sachiko's Secret, I'll give you tips on where and what vegetarians can eat in Tokyo. First of all, let's start with Japanese food—a tough one! Many dishes contain bits of meat when you least expect it, so be sure to ask. Even an innocent-looking rice ball could contain fish bits. Tempura could include deep-fried shrimp, and sushi is obviously raw fish. But some dishes are meat-free, such as plain soba noodles and udon noodles that don't have anything on top. You can also order tempura or other dishes and ask for them without meat or fish. And if all fails, the easiest way to find vegetarian food is to go to an Indian restaurant and order vegetarian curry!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #46

Help!

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

46

KANJI

1. 助けて下さい。
2. 警察を呼んで下さい。
3. 百十番お願いします。

KANA

1. たすけてください。
2. けいさつをよんでください。
3. ひゃくとうばんおねがいします。

ROMANIZATION

1. Tasukete kudasai.
2. Keisatsu o yonde kudasai.
3. Hyaku tō ban onegai shimasu.

ENGLISH

1. Please help me.
2. Please call the police.

CONT'D OVER

3. Please dial 110. (Please call the police.)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
助けて。	たすけて。	Tasukete.	Help!	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
警察	けいさつ	keisatsu	police	
呼んで	よんで	yonde	call	
百十番	ひゃくとうばん	hyaku tō ban	Number 110 (to call the police)	
お願いします	おねがいします	onagai shimasu	please	phrase
交番	こうばん	kōban	police box	Noun
火事	かじ	kaji	fire	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

誰か、助けて！ <i>Dare ka, tasukete!</i> Somebody help!	水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i> Can I have some water, please?
警察を呼んでください。 <i>Keisatsu wo yonde kudasai.</i> Please call the police!	救急車を呼んで下さい。 <i>Kyūkyūsha wo yonde kudasai.</i> Please call an ambulance!
百十番する。 <i>Hyakutōban suru.</i> I'll call 110.	よろしくお願いします。 <i>Yoroshiku onagai shimasu.</i> Pleased to meet you.

<p>交番はどこですか。 <i>Kōban wa doko desu ka?</i></p> <p>Where is the police box?</p>	<p>火事です。１１９番をお願いします。 <i>Kaji desu. 119ban wo onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>There's a fire! Please call 119.</p>
--	--

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll introduce some phrases you'll need to call for help. Hopefully, you won't have to use these phrases. While the threat of physical violence is not prevalent in Japan, you should always be careful. In addition, these phrases are not limited to threatening situations. They are also useful when you or someone around you needs immediate assistance.

Let's start with the basics. In Japanese, "Help!" is *Tasukete!* The dictionary form of this word is *tasukeru*, which means, "help." *Tasukete* is short for *Tasukete kudasai*, which means, "Please help me."

If you need to call the police, you can say *Keisatsu o yonde kudasai*. The first word *keisatsu* means, "police." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. *Yonde kudasai* is the polite way of saying, "Please call." The dictionary form of the verb "to call" is *yobu*. So together, we have *Keisatsu o yonde kudasai*. Literally, this means, "Police, please call" or "Please call the police."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips for Staying Safe in Japan!

Tip #1

Now for Sachiko's Secret. The phone number for calling the police is 110. We pronounce this *hyaku tō ban*, which consists of the words 100 (*hyaku*), 10 (*tō*), and number (*ban*). Sometimes, we use the phrase *Hyaku tō ban suru* to mean, "Call the police." The literal translation is, "110 number, to do." So, if someone comes up to you yelling *Hyaku tō ban onegai shimasu*, please call 110 for that person.

When you call this number, be sure to give them your name. *Watashi no namae wa...* means, "My name is..." Also give the contact number. *Jūsho wa...* means, "The address is..." Then explain what happened. If you can't, give your phone to the person who asked for help and let

him/her explain in Japanese. To learn how to explain situations and symptoms of illness, check out our upcoming lessons!

Here's another police-related tip. In Japan, we have little police boxes all around town called *kōban*. You'll notice them right away because they have signs with the English letters, "Kōban." When you're in trouble, you can walk into one of these police boxes and ask for help. The police officers there can help you with any problem—for example, if you lost your bag, had your wallet stolen, or were mugged. They can also help you when you're lost. I have asked the police for directions many times and the officers are always very helpful and kind.

Tip #2

Let's take this opportunity to go over how to call the fire department and yell, "Fire!" In Japanese, "fire" is *kaji*. If you spot a fire and you want to warn the people around you, just yell the word *kaji!* and call 119. Again, give them your name and address.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #47

Medical Assistance

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

47

KANJI

1. 医者を呼んで下さい。
2. 救急車を呼んで下さい。
3. 薬局はどこですか？
4. 下痢していますか？

KANA

1. いしゃをよんでください。
2. きゅうきゅうしゃをよんでください。
3. やっきょくはどこですか？
4. げりしていますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Isha o yonde kudasai.
2. Kyūkyūsha o yonde kudasai.
3. Yakkyoku wa doko desu ka?
4. Geri shite imasu ka?

ENGLISH

CONT'D OVER

1. Please call a doctor.
2. Please call an ambulance.
3. Where is the pharmacy?
4. Do you have diarrhea?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
医者	いしゃ	isha	doctor	noun
呼んで	よんで	yonde	call	
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
救急車	きゅうきゅうし や	kyūkyūsha	ambulance	noun
薬局	やっきょく	yakkyoku	pharmacy, drugstore	
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative
下痢	げり	geri	diarrhea	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>医者に行きます。 <i>Isha ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll go see a doctor.</p>	<p>救急車を呼んで下さい。 <i>Kyūkyūsha wo yonde kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please call an ambulance!</p>
<p>水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have some water, please?</p>	<p>救急車を呼んでください。 <i>kyūkyūsha wo yonde kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please call an ambulance.</p>

薬局に行きます。
Yakkyoku ni ikimasu.

I'll go to a pharmacy.

タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。
Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.

Where is the taxi stand?

下痢していますか。
Geri shite imasu ka.

Do you have diarrhea?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Let's start with the basic sentence used to call a doctor. In Japanese, "Please call a doctor" is *Isha o yonde kudasai*. The first word *isha* means "doctor." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. This is followed by *yonde*, a conjugation of the verb *yobu*, which means, "to call." *Kudasai* means "please." So all together, *Isha o yonde kudasai* literally means, "Doctor, call, please."

If your symptoms require immediate medical attention, ask someone to call an ambulance for you. In Japanese, "Please call an ambulance" is *Kyūkyūsha o yonde kudasai*. The first word *kyūkyūsha* means "ambulance." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. Next, we have *yonde*, again a conjugation of the verb *yobu*, which means, "to call." *Kudasai* means "please." So all together, *Kyūkyūsha o yonde kudasai* is literally translated as "Ambulance, call, please." In Japan, the number to dial for an ambulance or the fire department is 119. The number for the police is 110.

If your symptoms aren't too bad, perhaps you only need to get to a pharmacy. In Japanese, "Where is the pharmacy?" is *Yakkyoku wa doko desu ka?* The first word *yakkyoku* means "pharmacy." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. *Doko* means "where." *Desu* is the copula roughly meaning, "to be," and *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secrets for Dealing with Japanese Potty Mouths!

Tip#1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. Today's topic is a bit difficult to bring up. If you're eating right now, I suggest you stop the lesson and replay it some other time, because it's about bodily functions! Umm...I don't know why, but Japanese people love to talk about their bowel movements! You'll hear family members, colleagues, classmates, and teammates constantly telling each other that they've been constipated for three days or that they have diarrhea. And they talk about these things in public! On the trains, in the park, at school, at the office... I honestly don't know why. I heard it was like that in other Asian communities. But I know in Japan, it's considered polite to ask whether someone is feeling well or not. And when discussing details like bowel movements, it's almost like you're saying, "I care about you so much I'm willing to endure this gross topic." People look genuinely concerned when they ask, "Are you still constipated?" "Do you still have the runs?" So when you walk into a pharmacy in Japan, don't be surprised if the pharmacist asks you in a really loud voice, *Geri shite imasu ka?* ("Do you have diarrhea?") This actually happened to an American friend of mine. Yikes!

Tip#2

To learn how to explain specific symptoms, be sure to check out our upcoming lessons!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #48

Explaining Symptoms 1

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 8 Grammar
- 8 Cultural Insight

48

KANJI

1. お腹が痛いです。
2. 頭が痛いです。
3. 風邪をひいています。
4. 熱があります。
5. 下痢をしています。

KANA

1. おなかがいたいです。
2. あたまがいたいです。
3. かぜをひいています。
4. ねつがあります。
5. げりをしています。

ROMANIZATION

1. Onaka ga itai desu.
2. Atama ga itai desu.
3. Kaze o hiite imasu.

CONT'D OVER

4. Netsu ga arimasu.

5. Geri o shite imasu.

ENGLISH

1. My stomach hurts.

2. My head hurts.

3. I have a cold.

4. I have a fever.

5. I have diarrhea.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
痛い	いたい	itai	painful, hurt	adjective
肘	ひじ	hiji	elbow	noun
手	て	te	hand	noun
手首	てくび	tekubi	wrist	noun
指	ゆび	yubi	finger	noun
胸	むね	mune	chest	noun
背中	せなか	senaka	back (of body)	
腰	こし	koshi	lower back, hip	

お尻	おしり	o-shiri	backside, bottom	
脚	あし	ashi	leg	
膝	ひざ	hiza	knees	
足首	あしくび	ashikubi	ankles	
太股	ふともも	futomomo	thighs	
ふくらはぎ	ふくらはぎ	hukurahagi	calves	noun
あし	あし	ashi	foot	
足の指	あしのゆび	ashi no yubi	toes	
右	みぎ	migi	right	noun
左	ひだり	hidari	left	noun
腕	うで	ude	arm	noun
首	くび	kubi	neck	noun
肩	かた	kata	shoulders	
お腹	おなか	onaka	stomach	
頭	あたま	atama	head	noun
風邪	かぜ	kaze	cold (illness)	
ひく	ひく	hiku	to catch (dictionary form of hiite)	verb
熱	ねつ	netsu	fever, temperature	
ある	ある	aru	to exist (for inanimate objects); to have	
下痢	げり	geri	diarrhea	noun
する	する	suru	to do	verb
額	ひたい	hitai	forehead	noun

目	め	me	eye	noun
鼻	はな	hana	nose	noun
口	くち	kuchi	mouth	noun
唇	くちびる	kuchibiru	lips	
耳	みみ	mimi	ear	noun
顎	あご	ago	chin	noun
頬	ほほ	hoho	cheeks	
喉	のど	nodo	throat	noun
胃袋	いぶくろ	ibukuro	stomach (the organ)	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>のどが痛いです。 <i>Nodo ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>I have a sore throat.</p>	<p>肘を曲げる。 <i>Hiji wo mageru.</i></p> <p>I bend my elbow.</p>
<p>手をあげてください。 <i>Te o agete kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please raise your hand.</p>	<p>手首を折りました。 <i>Tekubi wo orimashita.</i></p> <p>I broke my wrist.</p>
<p>指を骨折した。 <i>Yubi o kossetsu shita.</i></p> <p>I broke my finger.</p>	<p>胸が痛いです。 <i>Mune ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>I have chest pain.</p>
<p>背中が痛いです。 <i>Senaka ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>My back hurts.</p>	<p>腰が痛いです。 <i>Koshi ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>My lower back hurts.</p>
<p>親が子供のお尻を叩きました。 <i>Oya ga kodomo no o-shiri wo tatakimashta.</i></p> <p>The parent spanked the child.</p>	<p>脚がしびれました。 <i>Ashi ga shibiremashita.</i></p> <p>My leg has fallen asleep.</p>

<p>膝が震えています。 <i>Hiza ga furuete imasu.</i></p> <p>My knees are shaking.</p>	<p>足首が疲れました。 <i>Ashikubi ga tsukaremashita.</i></p> <p>My ankles are tired.</p>
<p>太ももが痛いです。 <i>Futomomo ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>My thighs hurt.</p>	<p>ふくらはぎをつる。 <i>Fukurahagi wo tsuru.</i></p> <p>I get a cramp in my calf.</p>
<p>あしをけがした。 <i>Ashi o kega shita.</i></p> <p>I injured my foot.</p>	<p>足の指をマッサージする。 <i>Ashi no yubi wo massāji suru.</i></p> <p>I massage my toes.</p>
<p>右に曲がってください。 <i>Migi ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn right.</p>	<p>右にコンビニがあります。 <i>Migi ni konbini ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There is a convenience store on the right side.</p>
<p>左に曲がってください。 <i>Hidari ni magatte kudasai.</i></p> <p>Turn left.</p>	<p>コンビニの左に、おいしいラーメン屋があります。 <i>Konbini no hidari ni oishii rāmen-ya ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There is a good ramen shop to the left of the convenience store.</p>
<p>彼女の腕は細いです。 <i>Kanojo no ude wa hosoi desu.</i></p> <p>She has slim arms.</p>	<p>首が痛いです。 <i>Kubi ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>My neck hurts.</p>
<p>肩を怪我しました。 <i>Kata wo kega shimashita.</i></p> <p>I injured my shoulder.</p>	<p>お腹を壊した。 <i>O-naka o kowashita.</i></p> <p>I got an upset stomach.</p>
<p>頭が痛いです。 <i>Atama ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>I have a headache.</p>	<p>風邪ですか。 <i>Kaze desu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have a cold?</p>
<p>風邪をひいた。 <i>Kaze wo hīta.</i></p> <p>I caught a cold.</p>	<p>熱があります。 <i>Netsu ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have a fever.</p>

<p>彼らの庭にはゴミがたくさんあります。 <i>Karera no niwa ni wa gomi ga takusan arimasu.</i></p> <p>They have too much garbage in their garden.</p>	<p>にきびがたくさんある。 <i>Nikibi ga takusan aru.</i></p> <p>I have many pimples.</p>
<p>下痢していますか。 <i>Geri shite imasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have diarrhea?</p>	<p>何をすればいいのかわからない。 <i>Nani o sureba ii no ka wakaranai.</i></p> <p>I don't know what to do.</p>
<p>よく病気をする。 <i>Yoku byōki wo suru.</i></p> <p>I often get sick.</p>	<p>額に汗をかく。 <i>Hitai ni ase wo kaku.</i></p> <p>My forehead is sweating.</p>
<p>帰るときに目ぐすりを買ってきて。 <i>Kaeru toki ni me-gusuri o katte kite.</i></p> <p>Get me some eye drops on your way home.</p>	<p>目がかゆいです。 <i>Me ga kayui desu.</i></p> <p>My eyes are itchy.</p>
<p>たくさん褒められて、鼻が高くなる。 <i>Takusan homerarete, hana ga takaku naru.</i></p> <p>To feel proud from getting many compliments.</p>	<p>鼻がかゆいです。 <i>Hana ga kayui desu.</i></p> <p>My nose is itchy.</p>
<p>口に口紅を塗る。 <i>Kuchi ni kuchibeni o nuru.</i></p> <p>To put lipstick on one's mouth.</p>	<p>あの子供の口は大きいです。 <i>Ano kodomo no kuchi wa ōkī desu.</i></p> <p>That child has a big mouth.</p>
<p>あの人の唇は厚い。 <i>Ano hito no kuchibiru wa atsui.</i></p> <p>That person has thick lips.</p>	<p>耳が痛いです。 <i>Mimi ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>I have an earache.</p>
<p>顎が外れる。 <i>Ago ga hazureru.</i></p> <p>To dislocate one's jaw</p>	<p>父は顎にひげがあります。 <i>Chichi wa ago ni hige ga arimsu.</i></p> <p>My dad has a beard.</p>
<p>子供の頬が赤いです。 <i>Kodomo no hoho ga akai desu.</i></p> <p>The child's cheeks are red.</p>	<p>喉が痛いです。 <i>Nodo ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>My throat hurts.</p>

お相撲さんの胃袋は大きいです。

O-sumō-san no ibukuro wa ōkī desu.

Sumo wrestlers' stomachs are big.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll learn how to explain common symptoms in case you get sick during your trip. With jet lag, temperature differences, and humidity, you'll probably be more susceptible to illness in a foreign country. So let's make sure you know how to explain your symptoms when that happens.

Let's start with the expression, "My stomach hurts." In Japanese, that would be *O-naka ga itai desu*. The first word *o-naka* means "stomach." This is followed by *ga*, the subject-marking particle. *Itai* is the adjective that means "painful." *Desu* is the copula, the rough equivalent of the verb "to be." So together, we have *O-naka ga itai desu*. Literally, this means "Stomach, painful."

If you have a headache, you only need to change one word. We substitute "head" for "stomach." In Japanese, "head" is *atama*. So the phrase, "My head hurts" is *Atama ga itai desu*.

If you visit Japan during the winter, you might catch a cold. Apartments can get really cold in Japan because we don't have central heating. Hotels should be fine, though. But just in case, let's go over how to say "I have a cold" in Japanese: *Kaze o hīte imasu*. The first word *kaze* means "a cold." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. The next words *hīte imasu* is the polite way of saying, "I currently have." We use this verb mainly to refer to a cold. (The dictionary form of *hīte* is *hiku*.) So together, *Kaze o hīte imasu* is literally "Cold, I have" or "I have a cold."

When you catch a cold, you might also get a fever. In Japanese, "I have a fever" is *Netsu ga arimasu*. The first word *netsu* means "fever." This is followed by the object-marking particle *ga*. *Arimasu* is the polite way of saying "I have." So together, we have *Netsu ga arimasu*. Literally, this means, "Fever, I have."

And the last phrase is something you may feel a little uncomfortable talking about. But if it happens to you, believe me, you'll be glad we covered it. The embarrassing quote of the day is-"I have diarrhea." Ugh! I know this is an unpleasant phrase, but it's really important to know! In Japanese, "I have diarrhea" is *Geri o shite imasu*. The first word *geri* means "diarrhea." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. And that's followed by *shite imasu*, which is the polite way of saying, "I am doing." So together, we have *Geri o shite imasu*, which literally means, "Diarrhea, I am doing" or "I have diarrhea."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Tip #1

Now for your daily dose of Sachiko's Secret! When you're in a lot of pain or you're feeling miserable, you may not have the composure to remember the elaborate sentences we covered today. So, an easier thing to do is point to where it hurts and say, "Ouch!" In Japanese, that would be *Itai!* This may sound a bit immature, but it gets to the point! *Itai!*

Tip #2

Let's go over our main body parts so you can tell a doctor exactly where you feel the pain. With any of the words below, you can simply add *ga itai desu* to tell the doctor that that part of your body hurts. And remember, we don't differentiate between singular and plural forms in Japanese. So you can use *ude* to mean one or both arms.

We'll start with our face: *hitai* ("forehead"), *me* ("eyes"), *hana* ("nose"), *kuchi* ("mouth"), *kuchibiru* ("lips"), *mimi* ("ears"), *ago* ("chin"), *hoho* ("cheeks"), *nodo* ("throat").

Upper Body: *kata* ("shoulders"), *kubi* ("neck"), *ude* ("arms"), *hiji* ("elbows"), *te* ("hands"), *tekubi* ("wrists"), *yubi* ("fingers"), *mune* ("chest"), *onaka* ("abdomen"), *senaka* ("back"), *koshi* ("lower back").

Lower Body: *shiri* ("buttocks"), *ashi* ("legs"), *hiza* ("knees"), *ashikubi* ("ankles"), *hutomomo* ("thighs"), *hukurahagi* ("calves"), *ashi* ("feet" - pronounced the same way as the word to describe legs but written in a different character), *ashi no yubi* ("toes").

To specify either "right shoulder" or "left shoulder," you can say *migi kata* for "right shoulder" and *hidari kata* for "left shoulder." With other body parts, simply say either *migi* or *hidari*, followed by the body part.

And *o-naka* refers to the general abdomen area. When we say *O-naka ga itai*, we translate it as "My stomach hurts," because that's the most natural way to express this in English. The technical term for the stomach organ is *ibukuro* or simply *i*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #49

Explaining Symptoms 2

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 3 Romanization
- 4 English
- 4 Vocabulary
- 5 Sample Sentences
- 6 Grammar
- 7 Cultural Insight

49

KANJI

1. 風邪薬を下さい。
2. 頭痛薬を下さい。
3. アスピリンを下さい。
4. 整腸剤を下さい。
5. のど飴を下さい。
6. 花粉症です。
7. 鼻水が垂れる。
8. 目が痒い。
9. 喉が痒い。
10. 喉が渴く。
11. くしゃみが出る。

KANA

1. かぜぐすりをください。
2. づつうやくをください。
3. あすぴりんをください。

CONT'D OVER

4. せいちょうざいをください。
5. のどあめをください。
6. かふんしょうです。
7. はなみずがたれる。
8. めがかゆい。
9. のどがかゆい。
10. のどがかわく。
11. くしゃみがでる。

ROMANIZATION

1. Kaze gusuri o kudasai.
2. Zutsū yaku o kudasai.
3. Asupirin o kudasai.
4. Seichōzai o kudasai.
5. Nodo ame o kudasai.
6. Kahunshō desu.
7. Hanamizu ga tareru.

CONT'D OVER

8. Me ga kayui.
9. Nodo ga kayui.
10. Nodo ga kawaku.
11. Kushami ga deru.

ENGLISH

1. Please give me cold medicine.
2. Please give me anti-migraine pills.
3. Please give me aspirin.
4. Please give me pills to calm my digestive system.
5. Please give me cough drops.
6. I have hay fever.
7. I have a runny nose.
8. My eyes itch.
9. My throat itches.
10. My throat is dry.
11. I sneeze.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
風邪	かぜ	kaze	cold (illness)	
くしゃみ	くしゃみ	kushami	sneeze	noun
渴く	かわく	kawaku	to dry up	
痒い	かゆい	kayui	itches	
目	め	me	eye	noun
垂れる	たれる	tareru	to run (the nose runs)	
鼻水	はなみず	hanamizu	running nose	
花粉症	かふんしょう	kafunshō	hay fever, pollen allergy	
飴	あめ	ame	candy	
喉	のど	nodo	throat	noun
整腸剤	せいちょうざい	seichōzai	medicine to calm the digestive system	
アスピリン	アスピリン	asupirin	Aspirin	noun
頭痛	ずつう	zutsū	headache	noun
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
薬	くすり	kusuri	medicine	noun
出る	でる	deru	to come out	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

風邪ですか。 <i>Kaze desu ka.</i> Do you have a cold?	くしゃみがとまらない。 <i>Kushami ga tomaranai.</i> I can't stop sneezing.
---	---

<p>喉が渴きました。 <i>Nodo ga kawakimashita.</i></p> <p>I'm thirsty.</p>	<p>手が痒い。 <i>Te ga kayui.</i></p> <p>My hands are itchy.</p>
<p>帰るときに目ぐすりを買ってきて。 <i>Kaeru toki ni me-gusuri o katte kite.</i></p> <p>Get me some eye drops on your way home.</p>	<p>目がかゆいです。 <i>Me ga kayui desu.</i></p> <p>My eyes are itchy.</p>
<p>鼻水が垂れる。 <i>Hanamizu ga tareru.</i></p> <p>My nose is running.</p>	<p>鼻水がひどいです。 <i>Hanamizu ga hidoi desu.</i></p> <p>I have a terrible runny nose.</p>
<p>花粉症にかかった。 <i>Kafunshō ni kakatta.</i></p> <p>I caught hay fever.</p>	<p>子供が飴を舐めます。 <i>Kodomo ga ame wo namemasu</i></p> <p>The child eats candy.</p>
<p>喉が痛いです。 <i>Nodo ga itai desu.</i></p> <p>My throat hurts.</p>	<p>この整腸剤はいくらですか。 <i>Kono seichōzai wa ikiura desu ka.</i></p> <p>How much is this antifatulent?</p>
<p>アスピリンを下さい。 <i>Asupirin wo kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please give me an aspirin.</p>	<p>頭痛がします。 <i>Zutsū ga shimasu.</i></p> <p>I have a headache.</p>
<p>水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have some water, please?</p>	<p>あれは薬です。 <i>Are wa kusuri desu.</i></p> <p>That's medicine.</p>
<p>くしゃみが出る <i>Kushami ga deru.</i></p> <p>I sneeze.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

When you're sick, it's always best to seek professional help. But if you feel like you know your body well enough, and you know exactly what kind of medicine you need, all you have to do is ask for specific medicine at a pharmacy. So let's go over the phrases you'll need to ask for medication in Japan.

The Japanese word for "medicine" is *kusuri*, but sometimes it becomes *gusuri* or *yaku*, depending on the word that precedes it. Let's look at some examples. We'll start with "cold medicine," which in Japanese is *kaze gusuri*. The first word *kaze* means "cold." This is followed by *gusuri*, which is the same meaning as the word *kusuri*, or "medicine," but it's easier to pronounce when combined with the word *kaze*.

To ask for cold medicine in Japanese, you can say *Kaze gusuri o kudasai*. The first words *kaze gusuri* mean "cold medicine." This is followed by the object-marking particle *o*. And the last word *kudasai* means "please" or "please give me." So all together, we have *Kaze gusuri o kudasai*. Literally, this means "Cold medicine, please give me," or "Please give me cold medicine."

Basically, to ask for any kind of medicine, replace the first word with the type of medicine you need, and add *o kudasai*. That's the object-marking particle *o* followed by *kudasai*, which means "please give me."

Let's try some more examples. What if you get a headache from the onslaught of neon signs in late night Tokyo or from the crowded trains during rush hour? You can ask for *zutsū yaku*, which means "anti-migraine pills." To ask for these pills, you would say *Zutsū yaku o kudasai*. You could also ask for "aspirin" if you pronounce the word the Japanese way and add *o kudasai*. So, the entire sentence would be *Asupirin o kudasai*.

Perhaps you get an upset stomach from eating all the great food here! You'll need something to calm your digestive system. In Japan, we have what we translate in English as "pills to calm your digestive system." We call them *seichōzai*. To ask for those pills, simply add *o kudasai*. All together, it would be "*Seichōzai o kudasai*."

Or, if you get a sore throat from long hours of karaoke, as I often do, you can ask for cough drops, which we call *nodo ame* (*Nodo* means "throat" and *ame* is actually the word for "candy."). In a full sentence that would be *Nodo ame o kudasai*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips on Using a Japanese Pharmacy!

Tip#1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret! Japanese drugstores offer a wide variety of drugs,

health foods, and hair-care and skin-care products at a discount. You'll find many chain stores located all over the place. So be sure to check them out before shopping at high-end department stores or souvenir shops.

Tip#2

In case you travel to Japan in the spring, let's go over asking for hay fever medicine. In Japanese, "hay fever" is *kahunshō*. First, walk into a pharmacy and tell the pharmacist that you have hay fever. That would be *Kahunshō desu*. Then they will ask you if you have any of the following symptoms: *hana mizu ga tareru* ("runny nose"), *me ga kayui* ("itchy eyes"), *nodo ga kayui* ("itchy throat"), *nodo ga kawaku* ("dry throat"), and *kushami ga deru*. ("sneezing"). After that, the pharmacist will most likely recommend a good medicine to treat your symptoms.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #50

Explaining Allergies

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

50

KANJI

1. 卵アレルギーです。
2. 乳製品アレルギーです。
3. 卵抜きで下さい。

KANA

1. たまごアレルギーです。
2. にゅうせいひんアレルギーです。
3. たまごぬきでください。

ROMANIZATION

1. Tamago arerugī desu.
2. Nyūseihin arerugī desu.
3. Tamago nuki de kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. I am allergic to eggs.
2. I am allergic to dairy products.

CONT'D OVER

3. Please serve it to me without eggs.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
卵	たまご	tamago	eggs	
大丈夫	だいじょうぶ	daijōbu	alright, okay	adjective (na)
ライス	ライス	raisu	rice	noun
少なめ	すくなめ	sukuname	a small serving	
大盛り	おおもり	ōmori	a large serving	noun
抜き	ぬき	nuki	without	
ピーナッツ	ピーナッツ	pīnattsu	peanuts	
蕎麦	そば	soba	buckwheat noodles	noun
乳製品	にゅうせいひん	nyūseihin	dairy products	
アレルギー	アレルギー	arerugī	allergy	noun
駄目	だめ	dame	No, bad; Adj(na)	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>卵は好きじゃありません。 <i>Tamago wa suki ja arimasen.</i></p> <p>I don't like eggs.</p>	<p>金曜日の夜は大丈夫ですか。 <i>Kin-yōbi no yoru wa daijōbu desu ka.</i></p> <p>Is Friday night alright with you?</p>
<p>私は大丈夫です。 <i>Watashi wa daijōbu desu.</i></p> <p>I'm all right.</p>	<p>ライスとパン、どちらがいいですか。 <i>Raisu to pan, dochira ga ii desu ka.</i></p> <p>Would you like rice or bread?</p>

<p>麺少なめでお願いします。 <i>Men sukuname de onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>A small serving of noodles please.</p>	<p>ライス大盛りお願いします。 <i>Raisu ōmori onegai shimasu.</i></p> <p>A large serving of rice, please.</p>
<p>トマト抜きでお願いします。 <i>Tomato nuki de o-negai shimasu.</i></p> <p>No tomatoes, please.</p>	<p>ピーナッツアレルギーがあります。 <i>Pinattsu arerugī ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I'm allergic to peanuts.</p>
<p>蕎麦は美味しいです。 <i>Soba wa oishii desu.</i></p> <p>Buckwheat noodles are delicious.</p>	<p>牛乳とチーズは乳製品です。 <i>Gyūnyū to chīzu wa nyūseihin desu.</i></p> <p>Milk and cheese are dairy products.</p>
<p>アレルギーがあります。 <i>Arerugī ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have allergies.</p>	<p>子供は、駄目です。 <i>Kodomo wa dame desu.</i></p> <p>Children are not allowed.</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll go over how to explain allergies in case you need to tell the restaurant or hotel staff about your special diet. This phrase is really important to know if you have a food allergy that can be fatal.

"Allergy" in Japanese is *arerugī*. To say you are allergic to eggs, you would say *Tamago arerugī desu*. The first word *tamago* means "egg." This is followed by *arerugī*. The last word *desu* is a polite form of the verb "to be." So the word order should always be (1) what you're allergic to, (2) the word *arerugī*, (3) *desu*. Pretty simple, right? Let's try some more examples.

What if you're allergic to dairy products? You would say *Nyūseihin arerugī desu*. Dairy products are called *nyūseihin*. A common food allergy in Japan is *soba arerugī* or *pīnattsu arerugī*, both of which can be deadly. If you have any food allergies, be sure to look up the word in a dictionary before you come to Japan, and be ready to say today's phrase to the waiter or whoever is serving you.

Let's take this a step further. Let's say you are allergic to eggs and you want eggs taken out of your food or your food prepared without any eggs. How would you say that in Japanese? You would say *Tamago nuki de kudasai*. *Nuki* means "without." So *tamago nuki*

means "without eggs." *De* is a particle that we can use to describe materials used. And *kudasai* is our favorite word that means "please." So together, you can tell the wait staff in one breath: *Tamago arerugī desu. Tamago nuki de kudasai.*

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secrets for Ordering Food Japanese Style!

Tip #1

In today's Sachiko's Secret, we'll talk about food! When ordering at a restaurant in Japan, you have quite a lot of options. At some stores, you can actually choose the volume of rice and pasta. A huge serving is called *ōmori*, while a small serving is called *sukuname*. So if you order a lunchbox-style meal, with tempura or pork and ginger (my favorite!), you can choose *raisu ōmori*, which means "large serving of rice," or *raisu sukuname*, which means "small serving of rice." Beware, the *ōmori* is enough to feed a man and a half. And if you don't finish all the rice, others may consider you rude and wasteful!

Some eateries will actually charge customers fifty yen or so if the customer doesn't finish all his/her rice. I think this is to reduce waste and to maintain a level of respect. Back when we were young, our parents told us that there were seven gods in each grain of rice, so we had to eat every grain in our bowl!

Tip #2

Because of common food allergies, some bakeries in Japan add labels to their products explaining what the ingredients are. Some labels will say *tamago nuki*, which means "without eggs," as we learned today. Unfortunately, the labels are written in Japanese. So if you can't read it, just use today's phrases to elicit a response from the store clerks. They'll probably respond with *Daijōbu* or "It's okay," to mean "It's okay to eat this even if you are allergic to eggs." *Dame* or "No!" means, "Don't eat this if you're allergic to eggs."

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #51

Earthquakes! (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 7 Cultural Insight

51

KANJI

1. これは地震ですか？
2. 地震です。
3. そうです。
4. 違います。
5. テーブルの下で隠れましょう。
6. 避難しましょう。
7. 避難して下さい。

KANA

1. これはじしんですか？
2. じしんです。
3. そうです。
4. ちがいます。
5. てーぶるのしたにかくれましょう。
6. ひなんしましょう。
7. ひなんしてください。

ROMANIZATION

CONT'D OVER

1. Kore wa jishin desu ka?
2. Jishin desu.
3. Sō desu.
4. Chigaimasu.
5. Tēburu no shita ni kakuremashō.
6. Hinan shimashō.
7. Hinan shite kudasai.

ENGLISH

1. Is this an earthquake?
2. It's an earthquake.
3. That's right.
4. That's incorrect.
5. Let's hide under a table.
6. Let's evacuate.
7. Please evacuate.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
これ	これ	kore	this	noun
下さい	ください	kudasai	please	
する	する	suru	to do	verb
しましょう	しましょう	shimashō	let's	
避難	ひなん	hinan	evacuation, escape	
隠れる	かくれる	kakureru	to hide, to conceal oneself;V2	
下	した	shita	under,below, smaller	
テーブル	テーブル	tēburu	table	noun
いいえ	いいえ	iie	no	expression
はい	はい	hai	yes, that's right	
地震	じしん	jishin	earthquake	noun
避難袋	ひなんぶくろ	hinan bukuro	emergency backpack	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>これは何ですか。 <i>Kore wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is this?</p>	<p>あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>
<p>水を下さい。 <i>Mizu o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Can I have some water, please?</p>	<p>何をすればいいのかわからない。 <i>Nani o sureba ii no ka wakaranai.</i></p> <p>I don't know what to do.</p>

よく病気をします。 <i>Yoku byōki wo suru.</i> I often get sick.	乾杯しましょう。 <i>Kanpai shimashō.</i> Let's toast!
ここから避難しましょう。 <i>Koko kara hinan shimashō.</i> Let's evacuate this place.	テーブルの下に隠れましょう。 <i>Tēburu no shita ni kakuremashō.</i> Let's hide under a table.
本は机の下にある。 <i>Hon wa tsukue no shita ni aru.</i> The books are under the desk.	車の下にボールがあります。 <i>Kuruma no shita ni bōru ga arimasu.</i> There is a ball under the car.
テーブルの下にねこがいます。 <i>Tēburu no shita ni neko ga imasu.</i> There is a cat under the table.	いいえ、ちがいます。 <i>lie, chigaimasu.</i> No, that's wrong.
たなかさんですか。 - はい、そうです。 <i>Tanaka-san desu ka. - Hai, sou desu.</i> Are you Mr. Tanaka? - Yes, I am.	日本は地震大国だ。 <i>Nihon wa jishin-taikoku da.</i> Japan is prone to earthquakes.
日本の子供は、学校の避難訓練で、地震の際に身を守る方法を学びます。 <i>Nihon no kodomo wa, gakkō no hinan kunren de, jishin no sai ni mi o mamoru hōhō o manabimasu.</i> Japanese school children have periodic earthquake drills to teach them how to protect themselves in the event of an earthquake.	昨日、地震がありました。 <i>Kinō, jishin ga arimashita.</i> We had an earthquake yesterday.
避難袋を用意しました。 <i>Hinanbukuro wo yōi shimashita.</i> I prepared an emergency backpack.	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

First, we'll introduce how to say, "Is this an earthquake?" because if you've never experienced a quake before, you may not be sure when it really hits you. At first, it may feel like your head is swaying. Then you'll see things around you swaying as well. If the lights are swaying, then you're most likely experiencing a small earthquake. The important thing to do then is to turn off all the gas to prevent fires and to open doors so you can evacuate the room if necessary. Sometimes earthquakes will bend housing structures so much that doors won't open later, thus locking people into their rooms. So be sure to secure an exit while you can.

During a pretty big quake, you'll see books, dishes, and other heavy objects shaking and even falling off the shelves. In an earthquake this big, grab your emergency pack and hide under a table to avoid falling objects. You could get badly hurt if your computer or TV falls on you. If you feel the foundations of the house or building swaying or cracking, it's time to leave the building and evacuate to the nearest evacuation site (usually a local public school). To prepare for such evacuations, make sure to check the emergency exits and closest evacuation sites around your hotel, friend's house, or wherever you are staying.

Now we'll go over how to say the phrases. "Earthquake" in Japanese is *jishin*, which consists of the characters for "ground" and "shake." So literally, when the ground shakes, it's called a *jishin*.

In Japanese, "Is this an earthquake?" is *Kore wa jishin desu ka?* The first word *kore* means "this." *Wa* is a topic-marking particle. *Jishin* is "earthquake," as we covered earlier. *Desu* is a copula and *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So together, we have *Kore wa jishin desu ka?* This literally means, "This, earthquake, is it?" or "Is this an earthquake?" If the answer to this question is "yes," your companion will say either *hai* for "yes" or *sō desu*, which means, "Yes, it is." If the answer is "no," they would say either *īe* ("no") or *chigaimasu*, which means, "that's incorrect."

Once you know it's an earthquake, you want to alert your companions and neighbors right away. To tell them, "It's an earthquake," simply say *Jishin desu*. *Desu* is a copula, or a polite way of saying "it is."

If the quake is pretty big, your companion might suggest, "Let's hide under a table." This would be *Tēburu no shita de kakuremashō*. *Tēburu* is the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "table." *No* is a particle that describes possession. *Shita* means "under" and *ni* is a particle that describes location. In this case, *tēburu no shita de* means "under the table." *Kakuremashō* means, "let's hide." *Kakureru* is the dictionary form of the verb "to hide." Together, *Tēburu no shita de kakuremashō* means, "Let's hide under the table."

Lastly, we'll cover "Let's evacuate," which is *Hinan shimashō*. *Hinan* means "evacuation." *Shimashō* simply means, "let's do it." In the case of flooding or an oncoming tsunami, local police and fire department officials may go out into the streets and urge people to evacuate. They'll say *Hinan shite kudasai*, which means, "Please evacuate." If you hear this, quickly grab your valuables (wallet, passport, etc.) and your emergency pack, and follow the instructions they give you. If you can't understand what they're saying, simply follow everyone else in the same direction. You'll most likely end up in the designated evacuation center.

I really hope you won't need to use these phrases while you're in Japan. But if you do, remember to stay calm and to follow instructions from any locals or local authorities.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip; All About Japanese Emergency Evacuation Bags!

Tip #1

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. I mentioned emergency packs many times in this lesson. In Japanese, they're called *hinan bukuro*, or "evacuation bags." What exactly are they? They're backpacks filled with food, drinks, warm clothing, a radio, flashlights, first-aid kits, and other emergency goods. Many homes and offices in Japan have emergency packs ready in case of a fire or earthquake. It gives us comfort knowing that when the big one hits, we'll be ready. There are even books on how to best prepare emergency packs. Of course, they tell you the basic items to pack, such as water, food, and clothing. But one thing I found interesting was that it's important to pack an inspiring book. Because if you're trapped underneath tons of rubble for days on end-and this has happened to many unfortunate people during many earthquakes-maintaining one's will to live is crucial to survival. What book would you pack?

Where do we keep these backpacks? At home, we usually keep them near the entrance so we can grab them as we leave the house. At the office, they would be either in a meeting room or in each room of the office. At one company I worked at, we had an emergency pack and a construction helmet under every desk in the office!

Have I ever actually left the house with my emergency pack in hand? Just once-during the Great Hanshin Quake of January 1995 that killed 6,000 people. I was living in Osaka at the time with my parents, and we thought our apartment building was going to collapse. Everything fell from the shelves and broke, including a computer that narrowly missed my mother's head while she slept. Within two minutes of the quake, we had on our sneakers, winter jacket, and emergency packs and were ready to go! Luckily, none of us were hurt and neither were my friends. It was really scary, but having those emergency packs ready gave us one less thing to panic about!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #52

Self-Introduction (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

52

KANJI

1. はじめまして。
2. 宜しくお願いします。
3. ニューヨーク出身です。
4. シドニーの近くです。
5. 中込幸子と申します。
6. どうぞ宜しくお願いいたします。

KANA

1. はじめまして。
2. よろしくおねがいします。
3. にゅーよーくしゅっしんです。
4. しどにーのちかくです。
5. なかごめさちこともうします。
6. どうぞよろしくおねがいたします。

ROMANIZATION

1. Hajimemashite.

CONT'D OVER

2. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.
3. Nyūyōku shusshin desu.
4. Shidonī no chikaku desu.
5. Nakagome Sachiko to mōshimasu.
6. Dōzo yoroshiku onegai itashimasu.

ENGLISH

1. Nice to meet you.
2. Thank you in advance for your assistance.
3. I am from New York.
4. It is near Sydney.
5. I am (humbly) called Sachiko Nakagome.
6. (super polite way of saying) Thank you in advance for your assistance.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
お願いします	おねがいします	onegai shimasu	please	phrase
出身	しゅっしん	shusshin	hometown	

申します

もうします

mōshimasu

(humble form)
to be called, to
say; -masu form

SAMPLE SENTENCES

よろしくお願ひします。

Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.

Pleased to meet you.

出身はどこですか。

Shusshin wa doko desu ka.

Where are you from?

水木一男と申します。

Mizuki Kazuo to mōshimasu.

My name is Kazuo Mizuki.

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

When you meet someone for the first time, the first thing you would say is, "Nice to meet you," which in Japanese is *Hajimemashite*. Literally translated, *Hajimemashite* means, "for the first time," as in, "This is the first time I am meeting you." We use this phrase to acknowledge a stranger when we first meet. And we always use this expression first, even before giving our name.

Now let's go over stating your name. The simplest way to state your name is to say your name followed by *desu*, a polite way of saying "to be." When stating your name in Japanese, you typically put the family name first, followed by the first name. Japanese people have no middle names. So in my case, it's simply *Nakagome Sachiko desu*. *Nakagome* is my last name, and *Sachiko* is my first name. But Japanese people know that English speakers put their first name first, so they won't be surprised if you say John Smith *desu*. There are also more formal ways to state your name, but this phrase is polite enough.

After stating all this, there is a set phrase that we use to wrap up a self-introduction: *Yoroshiku onegai shimasu*. It's kind of hard to translate into English, but it's like saying, "Thank you in advance for your assistance," "Please assist me," or "Please take care of this." It's a typical thing to say when introducing yourself. And you can also use it as a stand-alone expression when asking for a favor. *Yoroshiku* is the adverbial form of the verb *yoroshi*, a polite way of saying "good." *Onegai shimasu* is a set phrase used to mean

"please" or to make a sentence formal.

Let's try this in sequence. When you meet someone for the first time, or if someone is introducing you to another person, you can say these three sentences consecutively: *Hajimemashite. Nakagome Sachiko desu. Yoroshiku onegai shimasu.* When saying the last sentence *Yoroshiku onegai shimasu*, we typically bow. Bend at the waist, lower your upper body at a 45-degree angle, hold it for one or two seconds, and then raise your body to the upright position.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip On Introducing Yourself in Japan!

Now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. If you want to add where you're from in your introduction, this is how you do it. For example, if you're from New York, you can add *Nyū Yōku shusshin desu.* *Shusshin* means you're from wherever city or country that precedes it. So your introduction would go like this: *Hajimemashite. John Smith desu. Nyū Yōku shusshin desu.*

If you're from a place that people are not familiar with, you could add some simple explanation after you say *XXX shusshin desu.* ("I am from XXX.") If you're from a city near Sydney, you could say *Shidonī no chikaku desu.* *Shidonī* is the Japanese pronunciation of the word "Sydney." *No* is a possessive particle and *chikaku* means "close to." If you're near London, say *Rondon no chikaku desu.*

The phrases we covered today are a bit formal and polite. But you can use them for casual settings as well. For a very serious business setting, we would use a more formal or humble form. We won't go into detail on the super formal here because these are survival phrases. But for reference, here it is: *Hajimemashite, Nakagome Sachiko to mōshimasu. Dōzo yoroshiku onegai itashimasu.* Quite a mouthful, eh? But don't worry; the polite phrases we covered today will suffice for most situations during a vacation. Unless, that is, you're meeting the Emperor!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #53

What Time Is It? (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

53

KANJI

1. 今何時ですか？

KANA

1. いまなんじですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Ima nan-ji desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. What time is it now?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
今	いま	ima	now	noun
何時	なんじ	nan-ji	what time	
六時	ろくじ	rokuji	six o'clock	noun
三十分	さんじゅっぷん	sanjuppun	thirty minutes	
五分钟前	ごふんまえ	gofun mae	five minutes to	
六時半	ろくじはん	roku-ji han	six thirty, half past six	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>今電話中です。 <i>Ima denwa chū desu.</i></p> <p>I'm on the phone right now.</p>	<p>今、十一時です。 <i>Ima, jū ichi-ji desu.</i></p> <p>It's 11 o'clock now.</p>
<p>今何時ですか。 <i>Ima nan-ji desu ka?</i></p> <p>What time is it now?</p>	<p>六時半から朝ごはんです。 <i>Roku-ji han kara asa-gohan desu.</i></p> <p>Breakfast starts at 6:30.</p>
<p>七時三十分に友達に会います。 <i>Shichi-ji sanjuppun ni tomodachi ni aimasu.</i></p> <p>I will meet my friend at seven thirty.</p>	<p>私は五分钟前にここに来ました。 <i>Watashi wa gofun-mae ni koko ni kimashita.</i></p> <p>I came here 5 minutes ago.</p>
<p>今、六時半です。 <i>Ima, roku-ji han desu.</i></p> <p>It's half past six now.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

First, let's go over the basic phrase, "What time is it now?" That would be *Ima nanji desu ka?* The first word *ima* means "now." This is followed by *nanji*, which means "what time." *Desu* is the copula and *ka* is the interrogative particle.

The answer to this question would be a number plus the word *ji*, which means "hour," and another number plus the word *fūn*, which means "minutes." Let's quickly go over the numbers one to ten. "One" is *ichi*, "two" is *ni*, "three" is *san*, "four" is *shi* or *yon*, "five" is *go*, "six" is *roku*, "seven" is *nana* or *shichi*, "eight" is *hachi*, "nine" is *kyū*, and "ten" is *jū*. Let's combine these numbers to tell time. "Six o'clock" would be *roku-ji*, "ten o'clock" would be *jū-ji*.

For the word "minutes," you could add either *fūn* or *pun*, depending on the number preceding it. We don't have time to go over every single number now, so let's just go over some basics. "Five minutes" is *go-fūn*. For "ten minutes," "twenty minutes," "thirty minutes," and other multiples of ten, *fūn* turns into *pun*. So "ten minutes" is *ju-pun*. "Twenty minutes" is *niju-pun*, "thirty minutes" is *sanju-pun*, "6:20" is *roku-ji niju-pun*, and "6:30" is *roku-ji sanju-pun*. There's a different way of saying half past, and that's *han*, which is short for *hanbun* ("half"). Using this term, we can also say *roku-ji-han* to mean "6:30."

Let's cover some more useful phrases to tell time. "Five minutes to" is *go-fun mae*. The last word *mae* means "before." So "five minutes to six" would be *roku-ji go-fun mae*. And if all else fails, just ask them to show you their watch! Numbers are universal!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip: When in Japan, Keep Your Eye on the Time!

Tip#1

In today's Sachiko's Secret, I'll tell you something that might save a potential friendship with the Japanese. As you may have read, Japanese people are very punctual. If they're going to be five minutes late to a meeting, they'll call to inform you of the five-minute delay. And they'll explain in detail why they're running late. Usually it's due to train delays. And railway companies will issue memos stating that their train lines were delayed so that working people can hand in these slips to their supervisors and prove that the delay was not their fault.

Being late is a real taboo, not only in business settings but in personal settings as well. We consider a five-, ten-, or fifteen-minute delay to be acceptable. But if you're more than thirty minutes late, that is unacceptable and we'll consider you very rude! We won't trust you to be on time next time. So when you make an appointment with the hairstylist or masseuse, or decide to meet with a friend, GET THERE ON TIME!

Tip#2

Let's go over how to say each hour of the day because some numbers turn into irregular forms when combined to tell time. Some numbers also have two readings so you want to know which reading is appropriate for telling time. (The irregular numbers, or numbers to watch out for, are marked with *.)

1. *ichi-ji* ("one o'clock")
2. *ni-ji* ("two o'clock")
3. *san-ji* ("three o'clock")
4. **yo-ji* ("four o'clock")
5. *go-ji* ("five o'clock")
6. *roku-ji* ("six o'clock")
7. **shichi-ji* ("seven o'clock,")

8. *hachi-ji* ("eight o'clock")
9. **ku-ji* ("nine o'clock")
10. *jū-ji* ("ten o'clock")
11. *jūichi-ji* ("eleven o'clock")
12. *jūni-ji* ("twelve o'clock")

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #54

What Time Does It Close/Open?

(Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

54

KANJI

1. ここは何時に開きますか？
2. 十時に開きます。
3. ここは何時に閉まりますか？
4. 十二時に閉まります。
5. 十二時にキッチンが閉まります。
6. ありがとうございます。

KANA

1. ここはなんじにあきますか？
2. じゅうじにあきます。
3. ここはなんじにしまりますか？
4. じゅうにじにしまります。
5. じゅうにじにキッチンがしまります。
6. ありがとうございます。

ROMANIZATION

1. Koko wa nan-ji ni akimasu ka?

CONT'D OVER

2. Jū-ji ni akimasu.
3. Koko wa nan-ji ni shimarimasu ka?
4. Jū ni-ji ni shimarimasu.
5. Jū ni-ji ni kitchin ga shimarimasu.
6. Arigatō gozaimashita.

ENGLISH

1. What time does this place open?
2. It will open at 10 o'clock.
3. What time does it close?
4. It will close at 12 o'clock.
5. The kitchen will close at 12 o'clock.
6. Thank you very much.

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
ここ	ここ	koko	here	noun
何時	なんじ	nan-ji	what time	

開きます	あきます	akimasu	to open (polite form)
閉まります	しまります	shimarimasu	to close (polite form)
キッチン	きッチン	kicchin	kitchen

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ここは禁煙です。 <i>Koko wa kin'en desu.</i></p> <p>This place is no-smoking.</p>	<p>今何時ですか。 <i>Ima nan-ji desu ka?</i></p> <p>What time is it now?</p>
<p>薬屋さんは、朝 10 時に開きます。 <i>Kusuriya-san wa, asa jū-ji ni akimasu.</i></p> <p>The drugstore opens at 10 am.</p>	<p>このレストランは十一時に閉まります。キッチンは十時にしまります。 <i>Kono resutoran wa jū ichi-ji ni shimarimasu.</i> <i>Kitchin wa jū-ji ni shimarimasu.</i></p> <p>This restaurant closes at 11pm. The kitchen closes at 10pm.</p>
<p>キッチンを掃除しました。 <i>Kitchin wo sōji shimashita.</i></p> <p>I cleaned up the kitchen.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In today's lesson, we'll go over some phrases you'll need to ask what time a place opens or closes. Let's start with, "What time does this place open?" In Japanese, that would be *Koko wa nan-ji ni akimasu ka?* The first word *koko* means "here," as in the business establishment you are in when you ask this question. This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. Then you will have *nan-ji*, which means "what time." *Ni* is a particle that we can translate as "at," as in, "at what time." And the last word *akimasu* is the polite way of saying "to open." And *ka* is the particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So altogether, we have *Koko wa nanji ni akimasu ka?* Literally this means, "Here, what time, open?" or "What time does this place open?"

The answer would probably be something such as *Jū-ji ni akimasu*, which means, "It will open at ten o'clock." *Jū* is "ten," and *ji* means "hour." So together, *jū-ji* is "ten o'clock." *Ni* is the particle we can translate as "at," as in "at what time." And *akimasu*, again, is the polite way of saying "will open." If a store opens at 11:00 AM, a store clerk would say *Jū ichi-ji ni akimasu*.

Now let's go over, "What time does it close?" In Japanese, that would be *Koko wa nanji ni shimarimasu ka?* The first half of the sentence is the same. *Koko wa nan-ji ni* means "what time does this place...." Let me explain the latter half. *Shimarimasu* is the polite way of saying, "will close." And *ka* is the question particle. So *shimarimasu ka* is the polite way of saying, "will it close?"

The answer to this question will most likely be something such as, *Jū ni-ji ni shimarimasu*, which means, "It will close at twelve o'clock." At restaurants, they may tell you that the kitchen closes at a certain time. In that case, they would say *Jū ni-ji ni kitchin ga shimarimasu*, which means, "The kitchen will close at twelve o'clock." *Kitchin* is simply the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "kitchen." *Ga* is a subject-marking particle. These two words are the only new words in this sentence. The rest is the same as the earlier sentence *Jū ni-ji ni shimarimasu*, which means, "It will close at twelve o'clock."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips on Not Overstaying Your Welcome in Japanese Establishments!

Tip #1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. Time is something you constantly need to be conscious of when you're in Japan. At nights, restaurants close their kitchens around 10:00 PM or 10:30 PM, so around that time, it's really hard to find a place to sit down for dinner or coffee. Most restaurants won't even let you in if they have already closed the kitchen at the time you knock on the door. If it's a café and you are only ordering drinks, they may let you in but you will only have about thirty minutes until the place closes. So you might want to think about whether it's worth investing in a five-dollar cup of coffee for a 30-minute chat with your friend. It might be cheaper to buy canned coffee from a vending machine and talk on a street corner! Another option is to get into a restaurant before 9:00 PM, order dinner, and stay there until closing time by ordering little things such as coffee and desserts along the way so you don't feel pressured to leave.

The reason stores close so early is that trains don't run around the clock, so most customers have to leave around 11:30 or midnight to catch their last trains home. So it would be pretty unprofitable at this point to keep restaurants open. Of course, some establishments such as clubs, bars, some restaurants, karaoke rooms, some movie theaters, and Internet cafes are open twenty-four hours. So if you miss your last train, you can spend the night at these facilities until your first train leaves at around 5:30 or 6:00 AM. If you're too tired to pull an

all-nighter, you can take a cab back to your hotel, which might be expensive. And if you're thinking of going out on the town early Sunday, think again! Many stores and restaurants in commercial areas don't open until 11:00 AM on Sundays. So keep this in mind when you plan your itinerary.

Tip #2

In Japan, many department stores play music to signal that it's almost closing time. The most commonly used music is "Auld Lang Syne," the familiar tune we hear on New Year's Eve! Why? I have no idea. In Japan, we also sing this song at graduation, so perhaps it symbolizes an end to something. Many stores play this tune about fifteen minutes before closing time and announce, "It is now fifteen minutes before closing time. Please visit us again in the near future." Then at closing time, the store clerks will all line up by the elevators or exits and bow to customers who are leaving. In unison, they'll say *Arigatō gozaimashita*, which is a version of "Thank you very much" in the past tense. (It's the past tense because it means, "Thank you for having visited our store....") This is quite an interesting scene, so you may want to drop by a department store near closing time (usually 7:00 or 8:00 PM on the shopping floors, and 10:00 PM or later on the restaurant floors).

At most restaurants, wait staff will go around to each table ten minutes before closing time to inform people and to collect payment. If you're still there past closing time, the wait staff will come over again to tell you that it's closing time. This can be a bit embarrassing, so be sure to leave before the appointed time.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #55

I Like It. I Don't Like It. (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

55

KANJI

1. これは好きです。
2. ラーメンは好きです。
3. 天ぷらは好きです。
4. これは嫌いです。
5. 納豆は嫌いです。
6. 好き嫌いがありますか？

KANA

1. これはすきです。
2. らーめんはすきです。
3. てんぷらはすきです。
4. これはきらいです。
5. なっとうはきらいです。
6. すききらいがありますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Kore wa suki desu.

CONT'D OVER

2. Rāmen wa suki desu.
3. Tempura wa suki desu.
4. Kore wa kirai desu.
5. Nattō wa kirai desu.
6. Suki kirai wa arimasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. I like this.
2. I like ramen noodles.
3. I like tempura.
4. I don't like this.
5. I don't like fermented beans.
6. Do you have any food preferences?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
これ	これ	kore	this	noun
海苔	のり	nori	dried seaweed	
ワカメ	わかめ	wakame	seaweed	

イクラ	いくら	ikura	salmon roe	noun
好き嫌い	すききらい	suki kirai	food preferences	
納豆	なっとう	nattō	fermented soybeans with a very strong smell	
天ぷら	てんぷら	tempura	tempura, deep-fried food	noun
ラーメン	ラーメン	rāmen	ramen noodles	noun
嫌い (な)	きらい (な)	kirai (na)	dislike; na-adj.	
好き	すき	suki	to like, likable; Adj(na)	adjective(na)
とろろ芋	とろろいも	tororo imo	Japanese yams	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>これは何ですか。 <i>Kore wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is this?</p>	<p>あれ？これは私のですか。 <i>Are? Kore wa watashi no desu ka.</i></p> <p>Huh? Is this mine?</p>
<p>このお店に海苔はありますか？ <i>Kono omise ni nori ha arimasuka?</i></p> <p>Do you have any dried seaweed at the store?</p>	<p>ワカメが好きです。 <i>Wakame ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like seaweed.</p>
<p>子供たちが大好きなイクラ！ <i>Kodomo-tachi ga daisuki na ikura!</i></p> <p>Children love salmon roe!</p>	<p>私はイクラの寿司が一番好きだ。 <i>Watashi wa ikura no sushi ga ichiban suki da.</i></p> <p>My favorite sushi is ikura (salmon roe).</p>
<p>好き嫌いがありますか。 <i>Sukikirai wa arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have any food preferences?</p>	<p>納豆は嫌いです。 <i>Nattō wa kirai desu.</i></p> <p>I dislike natto.</p>

<p>西日本では天ぷらを塩で食べますが、東日本では天つゆにつけて食べます。</p> <p><i>Nishi Nihon de wa tempura o shio de tabemasu ga, higashi Nihon de wa tentsuyu ni tsukete tabemasu.</i></p> <p>Traditionally people in West Japan enjoy tempura with salt, whereas people in East Japan dip it in a special sauce.</p>	<p>てんぷらは日本の料理です。</p> <p><i>Tenpura wa nihon no ryōri desu.</i></p> <p>Tempura is a Japanese dish.</p>
<p>いいラーメン屋はありますか。</p> <p><i>Ii rāmen-ya wa arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Are there any good ramen places?</p>	<p>私は悲しい映画が嫌いです。</p> <p><i>Watashi wa kanashii eiga ga kirai desu.</i></p> <p>I hate sad movies.</p>
<p>この店が好きです。</p> <p><i>Kono mise ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like this store.</p>	<p>私はオーディリー・ヘップバーンが好きです。</p> <p><i>Watashi wa Ōdorī Heppubān ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like Audrey Hepburn.</p>
<p>とろろ芋を食べたことがありますか。</p> <p><i>Tororoimo wo tabeta koto ga arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Have you ever had Japanese yams?</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In Japanese, "I like this" is *Kore wa suki desu*. The first word *kore* means "this." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. Next, we have *suki*, which means, "to like." Then we have *desu*, which is the polite way of saying "to be." So altogether, we have *Kore wa suki desu*. Literally, this means "This, I like," or "I like this."

If you want to say you like something in particular, you can substitute *kore* with the names of your favorite dishes. For example, if you like ramen noodles, a very popular dish here, you can say *Rāmen wa suki desu*. If you like tempura, you can say *Tempura wa suki desu*. It's a piece of cake!

Now let's take a look at the other end of the spectrum. In Japanese, "I don't like this" is *Kore wa kirai desu*. The first words *kore wa* means "this is," as we just covered. This is followed by *kirai*, which is the verb that means, "to dislike." *Desu* is a polite way of saying

"to be." So altogether, we have *Kore wa kirai desu*. Literally, this means, "This, I don't like," or "I don't like this."

Now again, you can just replace *kore* with any word to describe things you don't like. For example, maybe you don't like *nattō*, a traditional Japanese side dish of fermented beans! Many foreigners dislike the sticky texture and foul odor of *nattō*. To say, "I dislike *natto*," simply say *Nattō wa kirai desu*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips on Japanese Food Likes and Dislikes!

Tip #1

For today's Sachiko's Secret, I'll introduce a phrase people will ask you quite often. In Japanese, we have a term that means "likes and dislikes." *Suki kirai* is simply a combination of the words for "like" and "dislike." Usually, we use it to refer to food preferences.

So, if someone takes you to a restaurant and they want to know if there is anything you can't eat, they will ask you *Suki kirai wa arimasu ka?* "Do you like or dislike anything in particular?" And if you do have foods you can't eat, it's okay to be honest and tell them.

Especially if you are a vegetarian, be sure to mention it because that's unusual in Japan. If you're in Tokyo, Osaka, or any other major city, being a vegetarian won't be a huge inconvenience. You can always find Chinese or Indian restaurants that offer vegetarian dishes. Japanese restaurants have some vegetable dishes too, but it's hard to find main dishes that consist only of vegetables. (Be sure to check out our lesson titled, "I'm a Vegetarian" to learn more useful phrases!)

Tip #2

Let's go over some unusual Japanese foods that may be challenging for non-Japanese people to consume. I'm basing this strictly on my experience and hearsay, so there is nothing scientific about this research!

Nattō - "Fermented beans" (They're sticky and smelly.)

Ikura - "Salmon roe" (They're sticky and a ghastly looking bright red.)

Wakame - "Seaweed" (They're chewy and look like weeds growing in the ocean. I couldn't eat them when I was little.)

Nori - "Dried seaweed" (They look like black sheets when they are used to cover rice balls. When I was little, my American and Canadian friends thought they were ghastly looking simply

because of the color.)

Tororo imo - "Japanese yams" (They're sticky and bland tasting.)

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #56

Adjectives (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 5 Grammar
- 6 Cultural Insight

56

KANJI

1. すごい！
2. あらまあ！

KANA

1. すごい！
2. あらまあ！

ROMANIZATION

1. Sugee!
2. Ara mā!

ENGLISH

1. Holy! (male speech)
2. Oh my! (female speech)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
美しい	うつくしい	utsukushii	beautiful	

青	あお	ao	blue	
緑	みどり	midori	green	none
紫	むらさき	murasaki	purple	noun
黒	くろ	kuro	black	
白	しろ	shiro	white	
茶色	ちゃいろ	chairo	brown	
黄緑	きみどり	kimidori	yellow-green	
赤紫	あかむらさき	aka-murasaki	reddish purple	
朱色	しゅいろ	shu iro	bright red color	
赤	あか	aka	red	
黄色	きいろ	kiiro	yellow	
繊細	せんさい	sensai	delicate	
かわいい	かわいい	kawaii	pretty, cute, lovely, charming :Adj(i)	adjective
すごい	すごい	sugoi	amazing, great, fabulous	adjective
便利	べんり	benri	convenient, handy, useful	
速い	はやい	hayai	fast, quick; i-Adj	
遅い	おそい	osoi	late, slow	adjective
もっと	もっと	motto	more	adverb
小さい	ちいさい	chiisai	small, little, tiny	
大きい	おおきい	ōkii	big, large	adjective
肌色	はだいろ	hada iro	pinkish beige (literally translated as skin color)	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>キャメロン・ディアスは美しいです。 <i>Kyameron Diasu wa utsukushii desu.</i></p> <p>Cameron Diaz is beautiful.</p>	<p>青い空はきれいです。 <i>Aoi sora wa kirei desu.</i></p> <p>The blue sky is beautiful.</p>
<p>ブロッコリーは、緑の野菜です。 <i>Burokkorī wa midori no yasai desu.</i></p> <p>Broccoli is a green vegetable.</p>	<p>紫色の花は何ですか。 <i>Murasaki iro no hana wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What is the purple flower?</p>
<p>黒い靴を買いました。 <i>Kuroi kutsu o kaimashita.</i></p> <p>I bought black shoes.</p>	<p>白いドレスがほしいです。 <i>Shiroi doresu ga hoshī desu.</i></p> <p>I want a white dress.</p>
<p>茶色いズボンを買いました。 <i>Chairoi zubon wo kaimashita.</i></p> <p>I bought brown pants.</p>	<p>その黄緑の靴、可愛いですね。 <i>Sono kimidori no kutsu, kawaii desu ne.</i></p> <p>Those yellow-green shoes are cute, aren't they.</p>
<p>赤紫色の車に乗りました。 <i>Akamurasaki iro no kuruma ni norimashita.</i></p> <p>I rode in a reddish purple car.</p>	<p>日本の判子は朱色です。 <i>Nihon no hanko wa shuiro desu.</i></p> <p>Japanese name stamps are a bright red color.</p>
<p>子供の頬が赤いです。 <i>Kodomo no hoho ga akai desu.</i></p> <p>The child's cheeks are red.</p>	<p>ひまわりは黄色いです。 <i>Himawari wa kīroi desu.</i></p> <p>The sunflowers are yellow.</p>
<p>彼女は繊細な筆遣いで絵を描きました。 <i>Kanojo wa sensai na fudetsukai de e o kakimashita.</i></p> <p>She painted a picture with delicate brushstrokes.</p>	<p>赤ちゃんはかわいい。 <i>Aka-chan wa kawaii.</i></p> <p>Babies are cute.</p>
<p>この絵はすごいですね。 <i>Kono e wa sugoi desu ne.</i></p> <p>This picture is great.</p>	<p>東京は本当に便利です。 <i>Tokyō wa hontō ni benri desu.</i></p> <p>Tokyo is really convenient.</p>
<p>バスと電車、どちらのほうが速いですか。 <i>Basu to densha, dochira no hō ga hayai desu ka.</i></p> <p>Which is faster, a bus or a train?</p>	<p>遅くなってごめんなさい。 <i>Osoku natte gomen nasai.</i></p> <p>I'm sorry I'm late.</p>

<p>もっと食べてください。 <i>Motto tabete kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please have some more.</p>	<p>彼女は顔が小さい。 <i>Kanojo wa kao ga chiisai.</i></p> <p>She has a small face.</p>
<p>見たこともないような大きさの船が港に到着した。 <i>Mita koto mo nai yōna ōkisa no fune ga minato ni tōchaku shita.</i></p> <p>The largest ship I had ever seen was arriving at the port.</p>	<p>銀行の前に大きい本屋がある。 <i>Ginkō no mae ni ōkii hon-ya ga aru.</i></p> <p>There is a big bookstore in front of the bank.</p>
<p>彼女は肌色の携帯を持っている。 <i>Kanojo wa hadairo no keitai wo motte iru.</i></p> <p>She has a pinkish beige cell phone.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

Let's start with commenting on landscapes or structures. The great thing about Japanese is that you don't always need a subject or verb in a sentence. You can just utter an adjective and it will make sense as a sentence. If you simply say "Beautiful!" people will assume you're saying, "I think this is so beautiful." Convenient, eh? So pack up those adjectives in your suitcase!

The most common adjective you might use is, "beautiful," which is *utsukushī*. The centuries-old shrines and temples are *utsukushī*. We might consider kimonos, or traditional Japanese attire, with their colorful designs and intricate sashes, to be *utsukushī* or *sensai*, which means "delicate." When commenting on cool modern clothing, you might say *kawai*, which means "cute."

Modern skyscrapers, on the other hand, might be *sugoi*! meaning "wow!" or "amazing!" And electronic gadgets might be *benri*, or "convenient." The Bullet Train will feel really *hayai*, or "fast," while the local trains in rural Japan might feel *oso*i, or "slow."

You can also say these adjectives alone to mean what they mean. For example, *utuskushī* can simply mean, "beautiful." But if you want to sound natural and say, "It's beautiful, isn't it?" you can add *desu ne* to the adjective. So *Utsukushī desu ne*, would mean "Beautiful, isn't it?" It sounds more conversational. This sentence structure works with almost any adjective.

Now let's go over some phrases you'll need when you're shopping and you want something smaller or bigger, or the same thing in another color. *Motto chīsai* means "smaller." The first word *motto* means "more," so you can simply add this word in front of the adjective "small," which in Japanese is *chīsai*. Together, *motto chīsai* means "smaller." Similarly, "bigger" would be *motto ōkī*.

Let's go over some colors, shall we? "Yellow" is *kīro*, "red" is *aka*, "blue" is *ao*, and "green" is *midori*- does that sound familiar? Uh-huh. That's because *Midori* is also a girl's name. Remember the Japanese figure skater Midori Ito, the first woman in the world to land a triple axel in competition? Let's go over some more colors. "Purple" is *murasaki*.

If you listen to our upcoming lost and found lesson, you will cover some basic colors. "Black" is *kuro*, "white" is *shiro*, and "brown" is *chairo*.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips on Japanese Colors and He Said/She Said!

Tip #1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. In Japanese, we have unique words to describe colors. Sometimes we combine the names of colors to come up with a new color. Some of them I can't quite describe in English. For example, *ki-midori* is a combination of the words for yellow and green, and we can roughly translate it as "yellowish-green." *Aka-murasaki* is a combination of red and purple, and while we can translate it as "reddish-purple," the color looks like burgundy. Some colors are hard to describe in English, such as the color *shu iro*, which is the bright red color of an official seal or stamp. And there is *hada iro* which we directly translate as "skin color." In Japan, we use that word to describe the color of most Japanese people's skin, which is pinkish-beige. Again, these words probably came out of necessity in this unique culture.

Tip #2

During your trip to Japan, you may overhear people exclaiming *Aramā!* at breathtaking landscapes or culture-rich historic sites. That's a casual way for women to say, "Oh my!" Men, on the other hand, would say *Sugē*, which is a casual way of saying, "Wow!" Some Japanese words and phrases are distinctly used by either men or women. So it would be safe for foreign men to imitate the speech patterns of Japanese men, and foreign women to imitate the speech patterns of Japanese women. Generally, female speech is more soft-spoken and high-pitched, while male speech sounds coarser, rougher, and more cut off. The more casual the phrases, the greater the distinction between male and female speech.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #57

Lost and Found 1 (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 2 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 3 Grammar
- 4 Cultural Insight

57

KANJI

1. かばんをなくしました。
2. 忘れ物取扱所はどこですか？

KANA

1. かばんをなくしました。
2. わすれものとりあつかいじょはどこですか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Kaban o nakushimashita.
2. Wasuremono toriatsukaijo wa doko desu ka?

ENGLISH

1. I lost a bag.
2. Where is the lost and found counter?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
かばん	カバン	kaban	bag	noun

なくす	なくす	nakusu	to lose (dictionary form of nakushimasu)	
財布	さいふ	saifu	wallet	noun
パスポート	パスポート	pasupōto	passport	noun
傘	かさ	kasa	umbrella	noun
忘れ物取扱所	わすれものとり あつかいじょ	wasuremono toriatsukaijo	lost and found counter	
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>このかばんは私のです。 <i>Kono kaban wa watashi no desu.</i></p> <p>This bag is mine.</p>	<p>メガネをなくしました。 <i>Megane wo nakushimashita.</i></p> <p>I lost my glasses.</p>
<p>いけない！お財布を忘れた！ <i>Ikenai! O-saifu o wasureta!</i></p> <p>Oh no! I forgot my wallet!</p>	<p>海外旅行にパスポートは必須だ。 <i>Kaigairiyokō ni pasupōto wa hissu da.</i></p> <p>A passport is a must for an international trip.</p>
<p>パスポートがあります。 <i>Pasupōto ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>I have a passport.</p>	<p>傘をさす。 <i>Kasa o sasu.</i></p> <p>To put an umbrella up</p>
<p>あの傘をください。 <i>Ano kasa o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please give me that umbrella.</p>	<p>忘れ物取扱所はどこですか？ <i>Wasuremono toriatsukaijo ha doko desuka?</i></p> <p>Where is the lost and found counter?</p>
<p>タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushīnoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Where is the taxi stand?</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

You might think, "Ah, when have I ever lost anything in my life?" Well, in Japan, your chances of losing things might be higher than when you're at home. Instead of throwing all your belongings into the trunk of a car, you'll have to carry everything around on the trains, buses, and subways. And because you're unfamiliar with the places you plan to visit, you may have to suddenly dart off a train or jump off a bus, accidentally leaving an umbrella or bag behind.

For this lesson, let's suppose you left a bag on the train. The bag contains an expensive digital camera, your wallet, and your passport! You've got to get it back!

First, what you need to do is tell an employee of the railway company what happened. In Japanese, the word for bag is *kaban*. The easiest way to say, "I lost a bag" is *Kaban o nakushimashita*. The dictionary form of the verb "to lose" is *nakusu*. *Nakushimashita* is the polite way of saying, "I lost something," in the past tense.

To say you lost something else, simply replace the word *kaban* with another. For example, "wallet" would be *saifu*, and "passport" is *pasupōto*, simply the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "passport." So, "I lost my passport" would be *Pasupōto o nakushimashita*. "Umbrella" is *kasa*. So to say you lost your umbrella, you would say *Kasa o nakushimashita*.

At that point, a railway staff will guide you to the lost and found counter within the station. These counters are called *wasuremono toriatsukaijo*. The first word *wasuremono* means "lost item." The next word *toriatsukaijo* means "the place that takes care of them." So *wasuremono toriatsukaijo* literally means, "the place that takes care of lost items."

If you want to ask, "Where is the lost and found counter?" you could say *Wasuremono toriatsukaijo wa doko desu ka?* The words *wasuremono toriatsukaijo* are followed by the topic-marking particle *wa*. The word *doko* means "where," and *desu* is a copula. The last sound *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. So altogether, we have *Wasuremono toriatsukaijo wa doko desu ka?* To understand the answer, you'll have to check out the lesson on directions, because it's too much information to cover here. And to describe the item you lost, check out our next lesson!

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips to Keeping Tabs on Your Stuff While Traveling in Tokyo!

Tip #1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. What do you think is the most common thing left behind on Japanese trains? You hear the conductor constantly reminding people not to forget them. Any guesses? That's right, umbrellas! According to a report by West Japan Railways,

umbrellas topped the list of lost items, followed by clothing (including accessories such as glasses and hats). With umbrellas, people tend to hang them from a handrail on the train or put them on the floor, then forget about them when getting off the train. So be careful on rainy days!

Those overhead racks above the train seats are great when you're too tired to hold on to your bag. But that's another common place to forget things on the train. I use those overhead racks all the time, especially when I'm exhausted. This really beats keeping the bag on my shoulders or in my hands, even during a short ride. Now, if I put all my belongings on the rack, it's unlikely that I'll forget anything because I wouldn't leave the train empty-handed. But if I put just one bag on the rack and keep another bag on my shoulders, that's when I forget to take my bag off the rack. Because I feel like I already have my stuff with me. So beware of those racks! When you leave, make a mental note of all the belongings you should have with you!

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #58

Lost and Found 2 (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 2 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

58

KANJI

1. これはあなたのですか？
2. 東京駅から新宿駅。
3. 忘れ物セールはしますか？

KANA

1. これはあなたのですか？
2. とうきょうえきからしんじゅくえき。
3. わすれもののせーるはしますか？

ROMANIZATION

1. Kore wa anata no desu ka?
2. Tōkyō eki kara Shinjuku Eki.
3. Wasuremono no sēru wa shimasu ka?

ENGLISH

1. Is this yours?
2. From Tokyo Station to Shinjuku Station.

CONT'D OVER

3. Will you have a sale of lost items?

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
黒	くろ	kuro	black	
どこ	どこ	doko	where	interrogative
いつ	いつ	itsu	when	interrogative
電話番号	でんわばんごう	denwa bangō	telephone number	
名前	なまえ	namae	name	noun
もっと	もっと	motto	more	adverb
いいえ	いいえ	iie	no	expression
はい	はい	hai	yes, that's right	
大きい	おおきい	ōkii	big, large	adjective
小さい	ちいさい	chiisai	small, little, tiny	
白	しろ	shiro	white	
茶色	ちゃいろ	chairo	brown	
から	から	kara	from	particle

SAMPLE SENTENCES

黒い靴を買いました。 <i>Kuroi kutsu o kaimashita.</i> I bought black shoes.	タクシー乗り場はどこにありますか。 <i>Takushinoriba wa doko ni arimasu ka.</i> Where is the taxi stand?
---	--

<p>そのサッカーの試合はいつ始まりますか？ <i>Sono sakkā no shiai wa itsu hajimarimasu ka?</i></p> <p>When does the football game start?</p>	<p>いつ アメリカ に いきますか。 <i>Itsu Amerika ni ikimasu ka.</i></p> <p>When are you going to America?</p>
<p>電話番号は何番ですか。 <i>Denwabangō wa nan-ban desu ka.</i></p> <p>What's your phone number? / What's the phone number?</p>	<p>お名前は何ですか？ <i>O-namae wa nan desuka.</i></p> <p>What's your name?</p>
<p>あの人の名前は何ですか。 <i>Ano hito no namae wa nan desu ka.</i></p> <p>What's that person's name?</p>	<p>もっと食べてください。 <i>Motto tabete kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please have some more.</p>
<p>いいえ、ちがいます。 <i>lie, chigaimasu.</i></p> <p>No, that's wrong.</p>	<p>たなかさんですか。 - はい、そうです。 <i>Tanaka-san desu ka. - Hai, sou desu.</i></p> <p>Are you Mr. Tanaka? - Yes, I am.</p>
<p>見たこともないような大きさの船が港に到着した。 <i>Mita koto mo nai yōna ōkisa no fune ga minato ni tōchaku shita.</i></p> <p>The largest ship I had ever seen was arriving at the port.</p>	<p>銀行の前に大きい本屋がある。 <i>Ginkō no mae ni ōkii hon-ya ga aru.</i></p> <p>There is a big bookstore in front of the bank.</p>
<p>彼女は顔が小さい。 <i>Kanojo wa kao ga chiisai.</i></p> <p>She has a small face.</p>	<p>白いドレスがほしいです。 <i>Shiroi doresu ga hoshī desu.</i></p> <p>I want a white dress.</p>
<p>茶色いズボンを買いました。 <i>Chairoi zubon wo kaimashita.</i></p> <p>I bought brown pants.</p>	<p>新宿から渋谷までどのくらいですか。 <i>Shinjuku kara Shibuya made dono kurai desu ka.</i></p> <p>How far is it from Shinjuku to Shibuya?</p>

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

In our previous lesson, we went over *Kaban o nakushimashita* ("I lost a bag") and *Wasuremono toriatsukaijo wa doko desu ka?* ("Where is the lost and found counter?") For this lesson, let's suppose you go to the lost and found counter to claim the bag, and the clerks there point to various bags, asking if they are yours.

First of all, once you get to the lost and found counter, you should repeat the first sentence *Kaban o nakushimashita*, which means, "I lost a bag." Then, they'll probably want to know the color and size of the bag and where you lost it.

Let's go over some basic colors and sizes. "Black," my favorite color, is *kuro*. "Brown" is *chairo*. "White" is *shiro*. So if they ask *Nani iro?* (literally, "what color?"), you can say either *kuro*, *chairo*, or *shiro*, or simply point to an object that is the same color as your bag. To review more colors, check out our lesson on adjectives.

To describe different sizes, we'll go over *chīsai* ("small") and *ōkī* ("large"). Now let's try combining adjectives. If you lost a "big brown bag," you can say *ōkī, chairo no kaban*. The word *no* is the rough equivalent of the word "of." So the word order is (1) the size, (2) the color, (3) the word *no*, and (4) the item you lost. If you lost a "small black bag," you can say *chīsai kuro no kaban*. These phrases are the simplest way to state your needs.

Once you've described your lost item, hopefully, they'll bring out some bags that fit your description. They'll probably ask you, "Is this yours?" In Japanese, that would be *Kore wa anata no desu ka?* The first word *kore* means "this." This is followed by the topic-marking particle *wa* and then by the words *anata no*, which mean "yours." The last part *desu* is the copula and *ka* is a particle that turns a sentence into an interrogative. Altogether, *Kore wa anata no desu ka?* literally means, "This is yours?"

To answer this question, you can simply respond *hai* for "yes," or *īe* for "no." If the answer is "no," then you'll have to offer more details about your bag. For example, is it bigger or smaller than the one they brought out?

To say "bigger," simply add *motto* in front of the adjective for "big." So "bigger" would be *motto ōkī* and "smaller" would be *motto chīsai*. And again, they'll bring out some bags and ask *Kore wa anata no desu ka?* And again, answer with either *hai* ("yes") or *īe* ("no").

If they don't have anything on hand that fits your description, they may take down your contact information-*namae* ("name") and *denwa bangō* ("phone number"). They may also ask you when and where you lost it. For the question "when," which is *itsu*, you can simply write down the time on a piece of paper. To answer "where," or *doko*, you might want to say where you got on and off the train. Perhaps you got on the train at Tokyo Station and got off at Shinjuku Station. Just say *Tōkyō eki kara Shinjuku eki*. *Eki* means "station" and *kara* means "from." So the word order would be (1) the station you boarded at, (2) the word *kara*, and (3) the station you got off at.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip on Buying Unclaimed "Lost" Items in Japan!

Tip #1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. Lost and found counters in Japan are pretty reliable. Passengers are pretty good about reporting lost items, and the lost and found counter is fairly organized. So if you go there, they'll be efficient about finding your item. Unfortunately, many people don't bother to go to the counters so many items go unclaimed. At the end of the year, or whatever the cycle is, some train stations will sell unclaimed items at a discount! If you get info on one of these events, try it out! Who knows, you might find a watch or umbrella you like. It's like digging in a mountain of treasure! You can ask a railway employee *Wasuremono no sēru wa shimasu ka?* or "Will you have a sale of lost items?"

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #59

I'm Tired (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 3 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

59

KANJI

1. 疲れています。
2. 寒いです。
3. 暑いです。
4. お腹が空いています。
5. 喉が渴いています。

KANA

1. つかれています。
2. さむいです。
3. あついです。
4. おなかがすいています。
5. のどがかわいています。

ROMANIZATION

1. Tsukarete imasu.
2. Samui desu.
3. Atsui desu.

CONT'D OVER

4. O-naka ga suite imasu.
5. Nodo ga kawaite imasu.

ENGLISH

1. I'm tired.
2. I'm cold.
3. I'm hot.
4. My stomach is empty. (I'm hungry)
5. My throat is dry. (I'm thirsty)

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
疲れる	つかれる	tsukareru	to tire, to get tired	adverb, verb
寒い	さむい	samui	cold	adjective
暑い	あつい	atsui	hot; Adj (na)	adjective
お腹	おなか	onaka	stomach	
喉	のど	nodo	throat	noun
渴く	かわく	kawaku	to dry up	
いる	いる	iru	to be, to exist	verb

SAMPLE SENTENCES

足首が疲れました。 <i>Ashikubi ga tsukaremashita.</i> My ankles are tired.	最近、とても寒くなってきました。 <i>saikin, totemo samuku natte kimashita.</i> It's getting so cold lately.
アラスカはとても寒いです。 <i>Arasuka wa totemo samui desu.</i> Alaska is very cold.	今日は暑いです。 <i>Kyō wa atsui desu.</i> It's hot today.
お腹を壊した。 <i>O-naka o kowashita.</i> I got an upset stomach.	喉が痛いです。 <i>Nodo ga itai desu.</i> My throat hurts.
喉が渴きました。 <i>Nodo ga kawakimashita.</i> I'm thirsty.	今どこにいる？ <i>Ima doko ni iru?</i> Where are you now?

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

During your trip, you may need to tell your companions that you're tired, sick, or hungry. So today, we'll go over all of those. After spending the entire day going up and down the stairs of Tokyo's elaborate subway system with a huge bag, you might feel a little weary. You may need to tell your companion that you're tired. In Japanese, that would be *Tsukarete imasu*.

The first word *tsukarete* is the *te*-form of the word *tsukareru*, which means "to get tired." *Imasu* is a polite way of saying, "I am currently." So *Tsukarete imasu* literally means, "Tired, I am now."

Remember, Japanese sentences don't always need subjects, so you don't need to add the word "I." People will assume you're talking about yourself. And to add, "Let's take a break," you can say *Kyūkei shimashō*. The first word *kyūkei* means, "break." *Shimashō* means, "let's do it." Together, *Kyūkei shimashō* literally means, "Break, let's do it."

If you're cold, you can say *Samui desu*. *Samui* means "cold" and *desu* is a rough equivalent of the verb "to be." If you're hot, you would say *Atsui desu*.

If you're hungry, you can say *O-naka ga suite imasu*. This is a bit trickier. The first word

o-naka means "stomach." This is followed by the subject-marking particle *ga*. *Suite imasu* means, "It's empty." So altogether, *O-naka ga suite imasu* literally means, "Stomach is empty," or "I am hungry."

Similarly, if you're thirsty, you can say *Nodo ga kawaite imasu*. The first word *nodo* means "throat." This is followed by the subject-marking particle *ga*. *Kawaite imasu* means, "It's dry." So altogether, *Nodo ga kawaite imasu* literally means, "Throat is dry," or "I am thirsty."

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tip on Taking a Break in Japan without Breaking the Bank!

Tip #1

In today's Sachiko's Secret, we'll go over cheap ways to rest during your expensive trip to Japan! Yes, I'm the pro of frugal spending! If you're exhausted from a day of walking, you could walk into a café and pay 500 yen (about 5 US dollars) for a cup of coffee and sit in a freezing-cold air-conditioned room for an hour. I prefer not to! I get a canned drink for about 120 yen (or about a dollar and 20 cents) from the vending machine, and sit on a bench on the street. Street benches, however, are not very common here. So, if you're about to take the train anyway, you can just sit on a bench on the platform until you regain the energy to ride a packed train for thirty minutes!

Tip #2

Let's go over asking for certain items when you're cold or thirsty. In Japanese, "Please give me XXX" is *XXX o kudasai*. We've introduced this sentence in several lessons, but let's add some key vocabulary to that phrase today. To ask for water when you're thirsty, you could say *Mizu o kudasai*. To ask for a blanket when you're at a sidewalk café in the winter (or a heavily air-conditioned restaurant in the summer), you could say *Mōfu o kudasai*.

LESSON NOTES

Survival Phrases S2 #60 Congratulations! (Bonus)

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

60

KANJI

1. おめでとうございます
2. 誕生日おめでとうございます！
3. 今日は私の誕生日です。
4. どうもありがとうございます。
5. 明けましておめでとうございます！
6. 御結婚おめでとうございます！

KANA

1. おめでとうございます
2. たんじょうび おめでとうございます！
3. きょうはわたしのたんじょうびです。
4. どうもありがとうございます。
5. あけまして おめでとうございます！
6. ごけっこん おめでとうございます！

ROMANIZATION

1. Omedetō gozaimasu

CONT'D OVER

2. Tanjōbi omedetō gozaimasu!
3. Kyō wa watashi no tanjōbi desu.
4. Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu.
5. Akemashite omedetō gozaimasu!
6. Go-kekkon omedetō gozaimasu!

ENGLISH

1. Congratulations (formal)
2. Happy Birthday!
3. Today is my birthday.
4. Thank you very much.
5. Happy New Year!
6. Congratulations on your wedding!

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
今日	きょう	kyō	today	noun
ご結婚	ごけっこん	go-kekkon	marriage (formal)	

結婚	けっこん	kekkon	marriage	
成人式	せいじんしき	seijin shiki	coming-of-age ceremony	noun
仏滅	ぶつめつ	butsumetsu	most unlucky day(according to old almanacs)	

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>パレードは今日です。 <i>Parēdo wa kyō desu.</i></p> <p>The parade is today.</p>	<p>今日は暑いです。 <i>Kyō wa atsui desu.</i></p> <p>It's hot today.</p>
<p>ご結婚おめでとうございます。 <i>Go-kekkon omedetō gozaimasu.</i></p> <p>Congratulations on your marriage!</p>	<p>私達は六月に結婚します。 <i>Watashitachi wa roku-gatsu ni kekkon shimasu.</i></p> <p>We are getting married in June.</p>
<p>成人式に振袖で出席する。 <i>Seijin shiki ni furisode de shusseki suru.</i></p> <p>I'll attend the coming of age ceremony wearing a Attending the coming of age ceremony wearing a furisode.</p>	<p>成人式は来年です。 <i>Seijinshiki wa rainen desu.</i></p> <p>My coming-of-age ceremony is next year.</p>
<p>仏滅に結婚式はほとんどしません。 <i>Butsumetsu ni kekkonshiki wa shimasen.</i></p> <p>People rarely have a wedding party on a Butsumetsu day.</p>	

GRAMMAR

Language Tip

The most casual way to say, "Congratulations!" is *Omedetō!* This is a casual form that family and friends use amongst each other. To be more polite, you would add *gozaimasu*, which really doesn't mean anything except to make it sound polite. So altogether, the polite way of saying, "Congratulations!" is *Omedetō gozaimasu*. This is more appropriate

to use with strangers, colleagues, or people significantly older than you.

For example, in a restaurant you may hear a group of diners singing "Happy Birthday" to someone. (This is a pretty common way of celebrating birthdays in Japan.) When you walk by, you could smile and say *Omedetō gozaimasu!* to the birthday girl or boy. Japanese people don't usually talk to strangers. But for special occasions such as birthdays, it is acceptable and appreciated if a stranger talked to them.

If you're feeling ambitious, you can try saying, "Happy birthday" in Japanese. That would be the combination of the words "birthday" and "congratulations." "Birthday" in Japanese is *tanjōbi*. So "Happy birthday" would be *Tanjōbi omedetō gozaimasu*.

Now, if it happens to be your birthday, and you want the world to know it, you can say *Kyō wa watashi no tanjōbi desu*. *Kyō* means "today," *wa* is a topic-marking particle, and *watashi no* means "my." *Tanjōbi* is "birthday" and *desu* is a copula. So altogether, *Kyō wa watashi no tanjōbi desu* means, "Today is my birthday."

If it's your friend's birthday, simply replace *watashi no* with *yūjin no* and point to your friend. Or say the friend's name, followed by the possessive particle *no*. For example, "Jim's birthday" would be *Jim no tanjōbi*.

If someone congratulates you, as they probably will if you tell them it's your birthday, the appropriate response would be to thank them and bow. In Japanese, the most polite way to thank someone is *Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu*, as we covered in Lesson 1.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

Sachiko's Secret Tips on Celebrating in Japan!

Tip #1

And now it's time for Sachiko's Secret. If you or a companion is celebrating a birthday during your trip to Japan, I highly recommend having dinner at a nice restaurant and mentioning this to the wait staff. If you tell them the day before, they could prepare a cake specifically for the occasion with your companion's name on it. And when the time comes, the wait staff might come together to sing a Japanese version of the song, "Happy Birthday." (It's the same music and lyrics, just pronounced the Japanese way!) Even if you insist on paying for the cake, some restaurants will refuse to charge you. They'll insist that it's *sābisu*, which is the Japanese pronunciation of the English word "service," and used to mean, "it's free." That's what happened on my last birthday!

Tip #2

Let's go over times of the year when you might hear celebratory phrases in Japan.

If you happen to visit Japan at the end of the year, you might want to join in and say, "Happy New Year!" In Japanese, that would be *Akemashite omedetō gozaimasu!* We can translate the first word *akemashite* as "because the year started." So it's like saying, "Congratulations for the start of the new year."

If you go in mid-January, you may bump into a group of young women wearing kimonos! That's because the second Monday of January is Coming-of-Age Day in Japan, and local twenty-year-olds wear kimonos to attend Coming-of-Age-Day ceremonies called *seijin shiki*, which municipal governments organize. It's a joyous occasion for these young men and women, who at the age of twenty are now old enough to vote and drink legally. So if you see them, it would be appropriate-and very kind-for you to congratulate them with the common *Omedetō gozaimasu*.

Late March is also a celebratory season because of graduation. On the train, you might see junior high or high school students in school uniforms holding bouquets of flowers they received at a graduation ceremony, or university students wearing kimonos. (Many women wear kimonos at graduation ceremonies.)

June in Japan is the rainy season; therefore, you won't see many June weddings here! In Japan, people pay more attention to the particular date instead of seasons or months when choosing their wedding day because they want to avoid certain unlucky days designated under the Buddhist calendar. Each day has a designated level of luckiness, and the worst is *Butsumetsu*, which translates to "Buddha's Death."

Unfortunately, we don't encounter many brides or grooms in public. Many Japanese like to hold their weddings indoors-at hotels, churches, or restaurants-so you may not see any newlyweds during your trip. But if you do, be sure to congratulate them with *Goketkon omedetō gozaimasu!* The first word *go-ketkon* is a combination of the honorific prefix *go* and *ketkon*, which means "marriage."



LEARN JAPANESE: DISCOVER
**JAPANESE
CULTURE
& TRADITIONS**



JapanesePod101.com

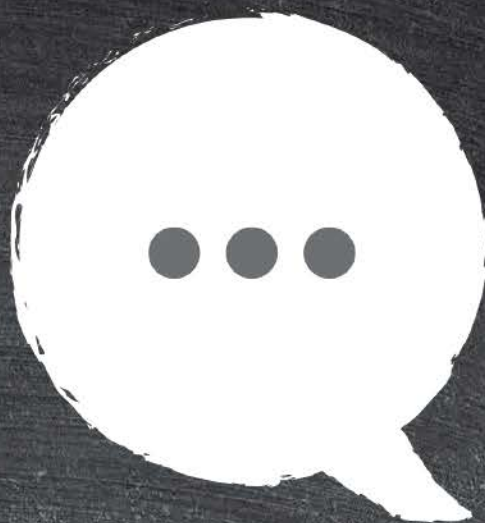
BONUS
TRAVEL TO
JAPAN
CHEAT SHEET

innoVativeLANGUAGE.COM

If you love the **Japanese** language, then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Japanese** Learning Program
at **JapanesePod101.com**.

- Speak **Japanese** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android Device or Computer



Go to
JapanesePod101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #1

National Holidays

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

#1

KANJI

1. What are five well-known national holidays in Japan?
2. 1. 建国記念の日
3. 2. 成人の日
4. 3. 敬老の日
5. 4. 勤労感謝の日
6. 5. こどもの日

KANA

1. What are five well-known national holidays in Japan?
2. 1. けんこくきねんのひ
3. 2. せいじんのひ
4. 3. けいろうのひ
5. 4. きんろうかんしゃのひ
6. 5. こどものひ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five well-known national holidays in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Kenkoku kinen no hi
3. 2. Seijin no hi
4. 3. Keirō no hi
5. 4. Kinrō kansha no hi
6. 5. Kodomo no hi

ENGLISH

1. What are five well-known national holidays in Japan?
2. 1. National Foundation Day
3. 2. Coming of Age Day
4. 3. Respect for the Aged Day
5. 4. Labour Thanksgiving Day
6. 5. Children's Day

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
建国記念の日	けんこくきねんのひ	Kenkoku kinen no hi	National Foundation Day
成人の日	せいじんのひ	Seijin no hi	Coming of Age Day

勤労感謝の日	きんろうかんしゃの ひ	Kinrō kansha no hi	Labour Thanksgiving Day
敬老の日	けいろうのひ	Keirō no hi	Respect for the Aged Day
こどもの日	こどものひ	Kodomo no hi	Children's Day

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>建国記念の日は、旧暦では元旦です。 <i>Kenkoku kinen no hi wa, kyūreki de wa Gantan desu.</i></p> <p>In the lunisolar calendar, Japan's National Foundation Day falls on New Year's Day.</p>	<p>成人の日には、20歳をむかえる多くの男女が着物や袴を着ます。 <i>Seijin no hi ni wa, hatachi o mukaeru ōku no danjo ga kimono ya hakama o kimasu.</i></p> <p>On Coming of Age Day, many men and women who are or will be twenty years old by the end of March that year wear traditional Japanese clothes called "kimono" and "hakama".</p>
<p>勤労感謝の日は、日々の勤労をねぎらう日です。 <i>Kinrō kansha no hi wa, hibi no kinrō o negirau hi desu.</i></p> <p>Labour Thanksgiving Day is the day for rewarding daily hard work.</p>	<p>敬老の日には、祖父母に感謝の気持ちを伝えます。 <i>Keirō no hi ni wa, sofubo ni kansha no kimochi o tsutaemasu.</i></p> <p>Japanese people show appreciation for their grandparents on Respect for the Aged Day.</p>
<p>昔は、毎年、こどもの日に身長を測り、成長をみる習慣がありました。 <i>Mukashi wa, maitoshi kodomo no hi ni shinchō o hakari, seichō o miru shūkan ga arimashita.</i></p> <p>In the olden days, Japanese people measured the height of the children on Children's Day every year to see how much they had grown.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. National Foundation Day

This day is the 11th of February and is considered to be Japan's National Foundation Day. It was officially established in 1966.

2. Coming of Age Day

Coming of Age Day is the second Monday of January. In Japan, 20 is considered the age of majority.

3. Respect for the Aged Day

Respect for the Aged Day is the third Monday of September. This day is for people to appreciate a lifetime of hard work from the elderly, and to show respect and love for them.

4. Labour Thanksgiving Day

Labour Thanksgiving Day is the 23rd of November. Japanese people celebrate the year's hard work, human rights, workers' rights and the production, harvest, and success of the year, as well as showing appreciation for each other's hard work.

5. Children's Day

Children's Day is the 5th of May. It's a day to celebrate children's individual personalities and to celebrate their happiness. It's also a day to show gratitude to mothers.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #2

Foods

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

2

KANJI

1. What are five common foods in Japan?
2. 1. 餅
3. 2. 納豆
4. 3. 豆腐
5. 4. おにぎり
6. 5. たい焼き

KANA

1. What are five common foods in Japan?
2. 1. もち
3. 2. なっとう
4. 3. とうふ
5. 4. おにぎり
6. 5. たいやき

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common foods in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. mochi
3. 2. nattō
4. 3. tōfu
5. 4. onigiri
6. 5. taiyaki

ENGLISH

1. What are five common foods in Japan?
2. 1. Mochi, Rice cake
3. 2. Nattō (fermented soybeans)
4. 3. Tofu, Bean curd
5. 4. Onigiri, Rice ball
6. 5. Taiyaki, a Fish-shaped cake

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
餅	もち	mochi	mochi, rice cake
納豆	なっとう	nattō	natto (fermented soy beans)

おにぎり	おにぎり	onigiri	rice ball
豆腐	とうふ	tōfu	tōfu, soybean curd
たい焼き	たいやき	taiyaki	fish-shaped pancake stuffed with bean jam

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>切り餅は焼いたり料理したりして食べます。</p> <p><i>Kirimochi wa yaitari ryōri shitari shite tabemasu.</i></p> <p>Cut mochi is enjoyed either grilled or cooked.</p>	<p>お正月には、地域でもちつき大会が行われます。</p> <p><i>O-shōgatsu ni wa, chiiki de mochitsuki taikai ga okonawaremasu.</i></p> <p>There are glutinous rice-pounding events held locally in Japan on New Year's Day.</p>
<p>日本では、毎朝納豆を食べる人がたくさんいます。</p> <p><i>Nihon de wa, maiasa nattō o taberu hito ga takusan imasu.</i></p> <p>In Japan, there are many people who eat nattō every morning.</p>	<p>おにぎりは、コンビニでも買えます。</p> <p><i>Onigiri wa, konbini de mo kaemasu.</i></p> <p>Rice balls are available even at convenience stores.</p>
<p>豆腐は、健康的な食べ物として世界でも有名です。</p> <p><i>Tōfu wa, kenkōteki na tabemono to shite sekai de mo yūmei desu.</i></p> <p>Tofu is famous all over the world as a healthy food.</p>	<p>豆腐は安くて健康的です。</p> <p><i>Tōfu wa yasukute kenkōteki desu.</i></p> <p>Tofu is cheap and healthy.</p>
<p>最近、たい焼きの中身にいろいろな種類があります。</p> <p><i>Saikin wa, taiyaki no nakami ni iroiro na shurui ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>Lately you can get taiyaki with a variety of different fillings.</p>	<p>たい焼きを買いたいです。</p> <p><i>Taiyaki o kaitai desu.</i></p> <p>I want to buy fish-shaped pancakes.</p>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Mochi, Rice cake

Mochi is a rice cake made of glutinous rice. Japanese people usually eat a lot of rice cake on New Year's Day.

2. Nattō (fermented soybeans)

Nattō is fermented soybeans that are infamous for their strong odor.

3. Tofu, bean curd

Tōfu is made by coagulating soy milk and pressing the resulting curds. It is eaten on its own, and is also used in many different types of dishes.

4. Onigiri, Rice ball

Onigiri (rice balls) are made from white rice formed into triangular or oval shapes. They're often wrapped with nori, or seaweed. Something salty or sour is put inside as a natural preservative, such as pickled plum (*umeboshi*) or salted salmon.

5. Taiyaki, a Fish-shaped cake

Taiyaki is a fish-shaped baked cake, traditionally filled with sweet red bean paste.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #3

Beverages

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

3

KANJI

1. What are five popular beverages in Japan?
2. 1. アイスコーヒー
3. 2. 緑茶
4. 3. 日本酒
5. 4. チューハイ
6. 5. ラムネ

KANA

1. What are five popular beverages in Japan?
2. 1. アイスコーヒー
3. 2. りよくちゃ
4. 3. にほんしゅ
5. 4. チューハイ
6. 5. ラムネ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular beverages in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. aisu kōhī
3. 2. ryokucha
4. 3. nihonshu
5. 4. chūhai
6. 5. ramune

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular beverages in Japan?
2. 1. Iced coffee
3. 2. Green tea
4. 3. Nihonshu, known in English as "sake"
5. 4. Chūhai, a mix of shōchū, carbonated water, and lemon
6. 5. Ramune, a carbonated soft drink

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
アイスコーヒー	アイスコーヒー	aisu kōhī	iced coffee
日本酒	にほんしゅ	Nihonshu	Nihonshu, known in English as "sake"

緑茶	りょくちゃ	ryokucha	green tea
ラムネ	ラムネ	ramune	ramune, a carbonated soft drink
チューハイ	チューハイ	chūhai	chūhai, a mix of shōchū, carbonated water, and lemon

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>日本では、いろいろな種類のアイスコーヒーが自動販売機で買えます。</p> <p><i>Nihon de wa, iroiro na shurui no aisu kōhī ga jidō hanbaiki de kaemasu.</i></p> <p>In Japan, there are many different types of iced coffee available at vending machines.</p>	<p>神前結婚式では、固めのしるしとして新郎新婦が日本酒を飲みます。</p> <p><i>Shinzen kekkonshiki de wa, katame no shirushi to shite shinrō shimpu ga nihonshu o nomimasu.</i></p> <p>In a traditional Shinto-style Japanese wedding ceremony, the bride and groom share sake as proof of their bond.</p>
<p>日本酒がありますか。</p> <p><i>Nihonshu ga arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Do you have Japanese rice wine?</p>	<p>静岡は、緑茶で有名です。</p> <p><i>Shizuoka wa, ryokucha de yūmei desu.</i></p> <p>Shizuoka is very famous for green tea.</p>
<p>ラムネは、さわやかな味だけでなく、涼しげなガラス瓶の使用もあって、夏によく飲まれます。</p> <p><i>Ramune wa, sawayaka na aji dake de naku, suzushige na garasubin no shiyō mo atte, natsu ni yoku nomaremasu.</i></p> <p>Ramune is enjoyed typically in summer not only for its refreshing taste, but also for its refreshingly cool-looking glass bottle.</p>	<p>チューハイのアルコール度は低めですが、缶チューハイはアルコール度が9%もあるものもあります。</p> <p><i>Chūhai no arukōrudo wa hikume desu ga, kan chūhai wa arukōrudo ga kyū-pāsento mo aru mono mo arimasu.</i></p> <p>The alcohol content in chūhai is rather low, but canned chūhai can have an alcohol percentage as high as 9%.</p>
<p>チューハイが好きだ。</p> <p><i>Chūhai ga suki da.</i></p> <p>I like Shochū-based beverages.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Iced coffee

Aisu kōhī is iced coffee, which many Japanese enjoy during the summer time. It's not a recent idea; Japanese people have been enjoying iced coffee for many years.

2. Green tea

Ryokucha is often translated as "Japanese tea." Recent studies have shown that green tea is effective in preventing cancer and in warding off the common cold. Japanese people are becoming more and more health-conscious, and so green tea is once again enjoying popularity.

3. Nihonshu, known in English as "sake"

Nihonshu is what is known as "sake" in English. It's a clear liquor made from fermented rice which can be served both hot and cold. Japanese people usually enjoy hot sake in the winter and cold sake in the summer.

4. Chūhai, a mix of shōchū, carbonated water, and lemon

Chūhai is an original Japanese alcoholic drink. Traditional chūhai is a mix of Japanese alcohol called *shōchū*, carbonated water and lemon. Recently, chuhai is often made with vodka, and flavored with all different kinds of fruits. *Chūhai* is enjoyed by many Japanese women for its sweet taste.

5. Ramune, a carbonated soft drink

Ramune is a carbonated soft drink which has been loved by Japanese people for a long time. The name *ramune* originates from the English word "lemonade," and the original taste was lemon-lime. Ramune is very widely known for its unique bottle shape with a glass marble inside. Ramune's fizzy taste and unique bottle were imported from the United Kingdom.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #4

Popular Homecooked Dishes

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

4

KANJI

1. What are five popular homecooked dishes in Japan?
2. 1. みそ汁
3. 2. カレーライス
4. 3. なべ
5. 4. 天ぷら
6. 5. ハンバーグ

KANA

1. What are five popular homecooked dishes in Japan?
2. 1. みそしる
3. 2. カレーライス
4. 3. なべ
5. 4. てんぷら
6. 5. ハンバーグ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular homecooked dishes in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. miso shiru
3. 2. karēraisu
4. 3. nabe
5. 4. tempura
6. 5. hanbāgu

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular homecooked dishes in Japan?
2. 1. Miso soup
3. 2. Japanese curry
4. 3. Nabe, Japanese hot pot dishes
5. 4. Tempura, deep-fried food
6. 5. Japanese hamburger steak

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
ハンバーグ	ハンバーグ	hanbāgu	Japanese hamburger steak
カレーライス	カレーライス	karēraisu	Japanese curry

みそ汁	みそしる	miso shiru	miso soup
天ぷら	てんぷら	tempura	tempura, deep-fried food
なべ	なべ	nabe	Japanese hot pot dishes

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ハンバーグは、日本の子供が好きな食べ物のひとつです。</p> <p><i>Hanbāgu wa, Nihon no kodomo ga suki na tabemono no hitotsu desu.</i></p> <p>Hamburger steak is one of the most popular dishes chosen by children in Japan.</p>	<p>カレーライスは、ひとつのお皿にごはん、カレー、福神漬をもりつけます。</p> <p><i>Karē raisu wa, hitotsu no o-sara ni gohan, karē, fukujinzuke o moritukemasu.</i></p> <p>Curry and rice is usually served on one plate, and consists of curry, white rice and special pickles called "fukushinzuke".</p>
<p>手作りのみそ汁は、家庭によって味がちがいます。</p> <p><i>Tezukuri no miso shiru wa, katei ni yotte aji ga chigaimasu.</i></p> <p>The taste of homemade miso soup differs from family to family.</p>	<p>西日本では天ぷらを塩で食べますが、東日本では天つゆにつけて食べます。</p> <p><i>Nishi Nihon de wa tempura o shio de tabemasu ga, higashi Nihon de wa tentsuyu ni tsukete tabemasu.</i></p> <p>Traditionally people in West Japan enjoy tempura with salt, whereas people in East Japan dip it in a special sauce.</p>
<p>てんぷらは日本の料理です。</p> <p><i>Tenpura wa nihon no ryōri desu.</i></p> <p>Tempura is a Japanese dish.</p>	<p>冬は、家族みんなで鍋を囲んで食事を楽しみます。</p> <p><i>Fuyu wa, kazoku min'na de nabe o kakonde shokuji o tanoshimimasu.</i></p> <p>In winter, Japanese people enjoy hotpot dishes by sharing food in one big pot with family members.</p>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Miso soup

Miso soup is a Japanese soup made from miso paste, which is made from fermented rice and soybeans. Miso soup can have seaweed, tofu, and/or vegetables in it.

2. Japanese curry

Karēraisu is Japanese curry and rice, which was brought to Japan by the British. The Japanese adapted its taste and style and it became a very popular dish enjoyed by all generations.

3. Nabe, Japanese hot pot dishes

Nabe is a collective term for Japanese hot pot dishes which use a big pot to cook a variety of ingredients. The ingredients are usually either meat, seafood, or fish, as well as a lot of vegetables.

4. Tempura, deep-fried food

Tempura is Japanese deep-fried seafood and/or vegetables. The batter is made of cold water, eggs and wheat flour.

5. Japanese hamburger steak

Hanbāgu, or hamburger steak, is made from miced meat, chopped onion, egg and breadcrumbs. It's similar to Salisbury steak, but the ingredients and sauce are different, making *hanbāgu* a Japanese original.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #5

Sweets and Desserts

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

5

KANJI

1. What are five popular sweets and desserts in Japan?
2. 1. だんご
3. 2. 桜餅
4. 3. ようかん
5. 4. プリン
6. 5. ラムネ

KANA

1. What are five popular sweets and desserts in Japan?
2. 1. だんご
3. 2. さくらもち
4. 3. ようかん
5. 4. プリン
6. 5. ラムネ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular sweets and desserts in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. dango
3. 2. sakuramochi
4. 3. yōkan
5. 4. purin
6. 5. ramune (confectionary)

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular sweets and desserts in Japan?
2. 1. Dango, Japanese dumplings
3. 2. Sakuramochi, a type of rice cake
4. 3. Sweet bean jelly
5. 4. Purin, Japanese custard pudding
6. 5. Ramune

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
桜餅	さくらもち	sakuramochi	sakuramochi, a type of rice cake
だんご	だんご	dango	dango, Japanese dumplings

ラムネ	ラムネ	ramune	ramune, or sugar candy pellets
ようかん	ようかん	yōkan	yōkan, or sweet bean jelly
プリン	プリン	purin	purin, Japanese custard pudding

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>日本人は、桜餅を3月3日ひなまつりの日に食べます。 <i>Nihon-jin wa, sakuramochi o san-gatsu mikka Hinamatsuri no hi ni tabemasu.</i></p> <p>Japanese people eat sakuramochi on the 3rd of March - Girls' Day.</p>	<p>花見だんごはピンク、白、緑の三色です。 <i>Hanami dango wa pinku, shiro, midori no san-shoku desu.</i></p> <p>Dumplings eaten at cherry-blossom viewings are coloured pink, white and green.</p>
<p>ラムネは、砂糖のように口で溶けます。 <i>Ramune wa, satō no yō ni kuchi de tokemasu.</i></p> <p>Ramune melts in the mouth like sugar.</p>	<p>ようかんは、とても甘いので苦い抹茶とよく合います。 <i>Yōkan wa, totemo amai no de nigai matcha to yoku aimasu.</i></p> <p>Sweet bean jelly is very sweet, so it goes well with a bitter green tea called "matcha".</p>
<p>日本には、スーパーで買えるプリンから有名パティシエの高級デザートまで、いろいろなタイプのプリンがあります。 <i>Nihon ni wa, sūpā de kaeru purin kara yūmei patishie no kōkyū dezāto made, iroiro na taipu no purin ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>There are many different types of custard pudding in Japan: some are available at supermarkets, while others are posh desserts from famous patissiers.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Japanese dumplings

Dango, or dumplings, are made from rice flour, shaped like balls and often served on a

skewer (one skewer takes three or four *dango*). Different seasonings and/or sauces are used, making different *dango* types all with different names.

2. Cherry blossom mochi

Sakuramochi consists of a sweet pink colored rice cake and sweet bean paste called *anko*. The pink color represents the color of the *sakura*, or cherry blossoms.

3. Sweet bean jelly

Yōkan, or sweet bean jelly, is made from red bean paste, agar and sugar. It's usually rectangular-shaped, and is served in slices.

4. Japanese custard pudding

Purin is Japanese custard pudding made from sugar, egg and milk, jellied in a cup with caramel sauce at the bottom. When you eat the pudding, you should turn the cup upside down on to a plate, so that the pudding comes out with the caramel sauce on top.

5. Ramune

Ramune is a Japanese confectionary shaped like tablets/pills made from soluble lactose. Ramune has been a popular sweet amongst children for a long time in Japan, and is still available at old-style candy shops.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #6

Fruits

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

6

KANJI

1. What are five common fruits in Japan?
2. 1. りんご
3. 2. さくらんぼ
4. 3. すいか
5. 4. 柿
6. 5. みかん

KANA

1. What are five common fruits in Japan?
2. 1. りんご
3. 2. さくらんぼ
4. 3. すいか
5. 4. かき
6. 5. みかん

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common fruits in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. ringo
3. 2. sakuranbo
4. 3. suika
5. 4. kaki
6. 5. mikan

ENGLISH

1. What are five common fruits in Japan?
2. 1. Apple
3. 2. Cherry
4. 3. Watermelon
5. 4. Persimmon
6. 5. Mandarin orange

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
りんご	りんご	ringo	apple
さくらんぼ	さくらんぼ	sakuranbo	cherry
柿	かき	kaki	persimmon

すいか	すいか	suika	watermelon
みかん	みかん	mikan	mandarin orange

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>青森県の旬のりんごは、あまくてみずみずしいです。</p> <p><i>Aomori-ken no shun no ringo wa, amakute mizumizushī desu.</i></p> <p>Apples from Aomori prefecture in season are sweet and very juicy.</p>	<p>さっき、りんごを食べました。</p> <p><i>Sakki, ringo o tabemashita.</i></p> <p>I ate an apple a little while ago.</p>
<p>日本では、さくらんぼは一番高い果物のひとつです。</p> <p><i>Nihon de wa, sakuranbo wa ichi-ban takai kudamono no hitotsu desu.</i></p> <p>In Japan, cherries are one of the most expensive fruits.</p>	<p>さくらんぼは、形がかわいい。</p> <p><i>Sakuranbo wa, katachi ga kawaii.</i></p> <p>Cherries look cute.</p>
<p>渋柿は、干柿にすると甘くなります。</p> <p><i>Shibugaki wa, hoshigaki ni suru to amaku narimasu.</i></p> <p>Bitter Japanese persimmons become very sweet when they're dried.</p>	<p>日本人は、夏に海で目隠しをしてすいかを割るゲームをします。</p> <p><i>Nihon-jin wa, natsu ni umi de mekakushi o shite suika o waru gēmu o shimasu.</i></p> <p>Japanese people enjoy a game at the beach during the summer in which you have to find and split a watermelon with a stick while blindfolded.</p>
<p>すいかは、夏の果物です。</p> <p><i>Suika wa, natsu no kudamono desu.</i></p> <p>Watermelon is a summer fruit.</p>	<p>愛媛県と和歌山県は、みかんで有名です。</p> <p><i>Ehime-ken to Wakayama-ken wa, mikan de yūmei desu.</i></p> <p>Ehime and Wakayama prefectures are famous for their mandarin oranges.</p>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Apple

Japan also has the old saying: "One apple a day keeps the doctors away." This is symbolic of the fact that apples have always been seen as a fruit that's good for the health.

2. Cherry

Yamagata prefecture is famous for its Japanese cherries. Japanese cherries are usually smaller than the American cherry, and their color is a pinkish-red.

3. Watermelon

Many Japanese enjoy eating watermelon in summer. Japanese watermelons are large, and small families cannot eat a whole one, so many supermarkets now sell watermelon pre-cut into quarters or eighths.

4. Japanese persimmon

Kaki, or persimmon, is an autumn fruit. It's enjoyed both fresh and dried.

5. Mandarin orange

Japanese people traditionally enjoy eating mandarin oranges in winter, when they're in season. A typical Japanese image of relaxing at home in winter is of family members eating mandarin oranges sitting under what's called a *kotatsu* (a small table with an electric heater underneath covered by a quilt).

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #7

Vegetables

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

#7

KANJI

1. What are five common vegetables in Japan?
2. 1. きゅうり
3. 2. ピーマン
4. 3. 玉ねぎ
5. 4. なすび
6. 5. にんじん

KANA

1. What are five common vegetables in Japan?
2. 1. きゅうり
3. 2. ピーマン
4. 3. たまねぎ
5. 4. なすび
6. 5. にんじん

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common vegetables in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. kyūri
3. 2. pīman
4. 3. tamanegi
5. 4. nasubi
6. 5. ninji

ENGLISH

1. What are five common vegetables in Japan?
2. 1. Cucumber
3. 2. Green pepper
4. 3. Onion
5. 4. Eggplant, aubergine
6. 5. Carrot

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
きゅうり	きゅうり	kyūri	cucumber
ピーマン	ピーマン	pīman	green pepper
なすび	なすび	nasubi	eggplant, aubergine

玉ねぎ	たまねぎ	tamanegi	onion
にんじん	にんじん	ninjin	carrot

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>日本人の多くはきゅうりの漬物が好きです。</p> <p><i>Nihon-jin no ōku wa kyūri no tsukemono ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>Many Japanese like eating cucumbers pickled with salt.</p>	<p>きゅうりは、夏の野菜です。</p> <p><i>Kyūri wa, natsu no yasai desu.</i></p> <p>Cucumber is a summer vegetable.</p>
<p>ピーマンは苦いので、ピーマンが嫌いな子供がたくさんいます。</p> <p><i>Pīman wa nigai no de, pīman ga kirai na kodomo ga takusan imasu.</i></p> <p>Many children don't like green pepper in Japan due to its bitter taste.</p>	<p>なすびの中でも、秋なすを食べると体温を下げると言われています。</p> <p><i>Nasubi no naka de mo, akinasu o taberu to taion o sageru to iwarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Eating Japanese eggplants, particularly autumn eggplants, is said to lower body temperature.</p>
<p>最近の研究で、玉ねぎを食べると血流がよくなることがわかりました。</p> <p><i>Saikin no kenkyū de, tamanegi o taberu to ketsuryū ga yokunaru koto ga wakarimashita.</i></p> <p>Recent studies show that eating onions improves blood flow.</p>	<p>玉ねぎを切ると涙が出る。</p> <p><i>Tamanegi o kiru to namida ga deru.</i></p> <p>Cutting up an onion makes your eyes tear up.</p>
<p>日本の親は、子供のために、にんじんをクッキーの型で星や花の形に切ります。</p> <p><i>Nihon no oya wa, kodomo no tameni, ninjin o kukkī no kata de hoshi ya hana no katachi ni kirimasu.</i></p> <p>Parents in Japan often cut carrots into star or flower shapes for their children using cookie cutters.</p>	<p>にんじんは体に良い。</p> <p><i>Ninjin wa karada ni ii.</i></p> <p>Carrots are good for your health.</p>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Cucumber

Cucumbers in Japan are smaller and a darker green than Western cucumbers. Cucumber is one of the most popular summer vegetables.

2. Green pepper

The Japanese green pepper, or *pīman*, is smaller and less watery than the Western green pepper. Due to its bitter taste when raw, many people prefer it cooked.

3. Onion

Onions are used in many Japanese dishes; boiled, fried, etc. Onions generate a sweet taste when cooked, which is one of the key flavors in traditional Japanese cuisine.

4. Aubergine

The Japanese eggplant, *nasubi*, is small and has an elongated shape. Its stalk end is a very dark violet, almost black colour.

5. Carrot

Carrots are one of the most unpopular vegetables amongst children in Japan. However, many adults try to eat carrots for their supposed health and beauty benefits.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #8

Pop and traditional culture

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

8

KANJI

1. What are five examples of pop and traditional culture in Japan?
2. 1. 書道
3. 2. 祭り
4. 3. 初詣
5. 4. お盆
6. 5. 俳句

KANA

1. What are five examples of pop and traditional culture in Japan?
2. 1. しょうどう
3. 2. まつり
4. 3. はつもうで
5. 4. おぼん
6. 5. はいく

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five examples of pop and traditional culture in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. shodō
3. 2. matsuri
4. 3. Hatsumōde
5. 4. O-bon
6. 5. haiku

ENGLISH

1. What are five examples of pop and traditional culture in Japan?
2. 1. Calligraphy
3. 2. Festival
4. 3. The first visit to a shrine of the year
5. 4. Bon Festival
6. 5. Haiku poetry

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
書道	しょどう	shodō	calligraphy
祭り	まつり	matsuri	festival
俳句	はいく	haiku	haiku poetry

初詣	はつもうで	Hatsumōde	The first visit to a shrine of the year
お盆	おぼん	O-bon	Bon Festival

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>小学生は、学校の書道の授業で習字を習います。</p> <p><i>Shōgakusei wa, gakkō no shodō no jugyō de shūji o naraimasu.</i></p> <p>Elementary school children learn calligraphy at school.</p>	<p>祭りがある時は、よく花火もあげられます。</p> <p><i>Matsuri ga aru toki wa, yoku hanabi mo ageraremasu.</i></p> <p>When there's a festival, fireworks are often also set off.</p>
<p>俳句には、限られた文字に深い思いが込められています。</p> <p><i>Haiku ni wa, kagirareta moji ni fukai omoi ga komerarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Haiku poetry expresses very deep thoughts with a very limited number of words.</p>	<p>初詣ではお守りを買ひ、古いお守りを返します。</p> <p><i>Hatsumōde de wa omamori o kai, furui omamori o kaeshimasu.</i></p> <p>At the first visit to the shrine of the year, people buy lucky charms and protective charms for the coming year and return those from the past year.</p>
<p>お盆は祖先をまつる期間なので、祖先の霊を迎える前にお墓を掃除するのは大切なことです。</p> <p><i>O-bon wa sosen o matsuru kikan na no de, sosen no rei o mukaeru mae ni o-haka o sōji suru no wa taisetsu na koto desu.</i></p> <p>Obon is a period of honoring one's ancestors, so it's important to clean the family graves before welcoming their spirits.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Calligraphy

In Japanese calligraphy, an ink brush is dipped in black ink produced from an inkstick. Calligraphy was the standard form of writing in ancient Japan, but it now remains as an art form.

2. Festival

Matsuri is a general term in Japanese for any kind of festival. At Japanese festivals, there are many stalls selling food and/or offering games. Such festivals are often held in warm or hot seasons and people go out at night wearing traditional summer kimono called *yukata*.

3. The first visit to a shrine of the year

Hatsumōde is the first visit to a shrine (sometimes a temple) of the year. People go to the shrine on one of the first three days in January to greet the gods and to pray for a good year.

4. Bon Festival

O-bon is a Japanese Buddhist custom which takes place in August, during which the spirits of deceased ancestors are said to revisit the altar in the family home. Typically, Japanese people welcome their deceased ancestors on the 13th of August and send them back to the afterlife on the 16th of August, but these dates vary in each region.

5. Haiku poetry

A haiku poem has only three lines, with 5 syllables in the first line, 7 in the second line and 5 in third line. It must usually include a word which represents a season.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #9

Animals

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Cultural Insight

9

KANJI

1. What are five common animals in Japan?
2. 1. 犬
3. 2. 猫
4. 3. うさぎ
5. 4. 亀
6. 5. 猿

KANA

1. What are five common animals in Japan?
2. 1. いぬ
3. 2. ねこ
4. 3. うさぎ
5. 4. かめ
6. 5. さる

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common animals in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. inu
3. 2. neko
4. 3. usagi
5. 4. kame
6. 5. saru

ENGLISH

1. What are five common animals in Japan?
2. 1. Dog
3. 2. Cat
4. 3. Rabbit
5. 4. Turtle
6. 5. Monkey

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
犬	いぬ	inu	dog
猫	ねこ	neko	cat
亀	かめ	kame	turtle

うさぎ	うさぎ	usagi	rabbit
猿	さる	saru	monkey

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>柴犬という犬は、常に日本人に人気のある日本犬です。</p> <p><i>Shibaken to iu inu wa, tsune ni Nihon-jin ni ninki no aru Nihonken desu.</i></p> <p>The "shibaken" is a Japanese breed of dog which has always been one of the most popular with Japanese people.</p>	<p>私の犬です。</p> <p><i>Watashi no inu desu.</i></p> <p>It's my dog.</p>
<p>日本には、客が自由に猫と遊んでくつろげる「ネコカフェ」と呼ばれるカフェがたくさんあります。</p> <p><i>Nihon ni wa, kyaku ga jiyū ni neko to asonde kutsurogeru "neko kafe" to yobareru kafe ga takusan arimasu.</i></p> <p>There are many cafes in Japan called "Cat Cafes" where customers can have a relaxing time playing with the cats there.</p>	<p>テーブルの下にねこがいます。</p> <p><i>Tēburu no shita ni neko ga imasu.</i></p> <p>There is a cat under the table.</p>
<p>亀は一万年生きると言われています。</p> <p><i>Kame wa ichi-man-nen ikiru to iwarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Turtles are said to live for 10,000 years.</p>	<p>ウミガメが海を泳いでいる。</p> <p><i>Umigame ga umi o oyoide iru.</i></p> <p>The sea turtle is swimming in the sea.</p>
<p>最近、うさぎを飼っている人の間で、うさぎを散歩につれていくのがはやっています。</p> <p><i>Saikin, usagi o katte iru hito no aida de, usagi o sampo ni tsurete iku no ga hayatte imasu.</i></p> <p>Lately there is a trend among rabbit owners to take their rabbits for walks.</p>	<p>茶色いウサギが庭の葉っぱを食べている。</p> <p><i>Chairoi usagi ga niwa de happa o tabete iru.</i></p> <p>The brown rabbit is eating leaves in the garden.</p>

家で二匹うさぎを飼っている。

ie de ni-hiki usagi o katte iru.

I have two rabbits at home.

日本では、冬に猿も温泉を楽しみます。

Nihon de wa, fuyu ni saru mo onsen o tanoshimimasu.

In Japan, monkeys also enjoy hot natural springs in winter.

サルが棒でありを捕まえて食べている

Saru ga bō de ari o tsukamaete tabete iru.

The monkeys are eating ants with a stick.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Dog

In recent years, there have been fads in Japan for certain types of dogs in which one breed is especially popular for some time, to be replaced later by another breed for the number 1 popularity slot. Prices for dogs at pet shops change drastically according to these fads.

2. Cat

Cats, alongside dogs, have always been one of the most typical and popular family pets for Japanese families. Recently in Japan a new type of cafe, called a Cat Cafe, designed especially for cat lovers, has appeared.

3. Rabbit

Rabbits have recently become one of the more popular Japanese pets. One of the reasons for this is that rabbits don't make noise like dogs and cats do, and are fairly easy to take care of.

4. Turtle

Turtles are considered as auspicious in Japan for their longevity. Many people used to buy small turtles at festivals, but then some people would release them into the river when they grew too big.

5. Monkey

There are many famous "performer" monkeys in Japan. These trained monkeys have been entertaining Japanese people for a long time.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #10

Plants

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

10

KANJI

1. What are five common plants in Japan?
2. 1. 桜
3. 2. 松
4. 3. 菊
5. 4. あじさい
6. 5. イチヨウ

KANA

1. What are five common plants in Japan?
2. 1. さくら
3. 2. まつ
4. 3. きく
5. 4. あじさい
6. 5. イチヨウ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common plants in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. sakura
3. 2. matsu
4. 3. kiku
5. 4. ajisai
6. 5. ichō

ENGLISH

1. What are five common plants in Japan?
2. 1. Cherry blossom
3. 2. Pine
4. 3. Chrysanthemum
5. 4. Hydrangea
6. 5. Ginkgo

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
桜	さくら	sakura	cherry blossoms
菊	きく	kiku	chrysanthemum
あじさい	あじさい	ajisai	hydrangea

松	まつ	matsu	pine
イチョウ	イチョウ	ichō	ginkgo

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>日本人は、夜桜も楽しめます。 <i>Nihon-jin wa, yozakura mo tamoshimimasu.</i></p> <p>Japanese people enjoy cherry blossom viewing at night as well.</p>	<p>桜がきれいだね。 <i>Sakura ga kirei da ne.</i></p> <p>The cherry blossoms are pretty, aren't they?</p>
<p>菊は、仏花の代表的な花です。 <i>Kiku wa, bukka no daihyōteki na hana desu.</i></p> <p>Chrysanthemums are a typical flower to offer at the Buddhist family altar and tomb.</p>	<p>菊の花を買った。 <i>Kiku no hana o katta.</i></p> <p>I bought a chrysanthemum.</p>
<p>あじさいの花の色は、土壌の酸性度によって決まります。 <i>Ajisai no hana no iro wa, dojō no sanseido ni yotte kimarimasu.</i></p> <p>The color of a hydrangea depends on the pH level in the soil.</p>	<p>正月の間、門松を家の前に飾ります。 <i>Shōgatsu no aida, kadomatsu o ie no mae ni kazarimasu.</i></p> <p>During the New Year period, traditional decorations made from pine and bamboo are placed in front of houses.</p>
<p>多くの日本人が、イチョウの種である銀杏を好んで食べます。 <i>Ōkuno Nihon-jin ga, ichō no tane de aru gin'nan o kononde tabemasu.</i></p> <p>Many Japanese people enjoy grilled or cooked ginkgo seeds.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Cherry blossom

Japanese people enjoy cherry blossoms in spring. In spring weather forecasts, the so-called "cherry blossom front" is also mentioned; this is like a sign of spring coming for Japanese people.

2.

Pine

The pine is considered an auspicious tree which represents youth and long life. Pines are often used as garden trees and/or miniature potted trees.

3. Chrysanthemum

Chrysanthemums have long been used in Japan as the family emblem of the aristocracy. It's known as the Imperial Seal of Japan.

4. Hydrangea

The hydrangea is a flower representative of the rainy season in Japan. Japanese people enjoy the beauty of hydrangeas in the wet, humid and hot rainy season.

5. Ginkgo

Ginkgo trees are mostly found lining streets. In autumn, their leaves' color changes to a beautiful yellow.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #11

Geographical Features

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

11

KANJI

1. What are five common geographical features in Japan?
2. 1. 山
3. 2. 海
4. 3. 島
5. 4. 火山
6. 5. 川

KANA

1. What are five common geographical features in Japan?
2. 1. やま
3. 2. うみ
4. 3. しま
5. 4. かざん
6. 5. かわ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common geographical features in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. yama
3. 2. umi
4. 3. shima
5. 4. kasan
6. 5. kawa

ENGLISH

1. What are five common geographical features in Japan?
2. 1. Mountain
3. 2. Sea/ocean
4. 3. Island
5. 4. Volcano
6. 5. River

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
山	やま	yama	mountain
島	しま	shima	island
川	かわ	kawa	river

海	うみ	umi	sea, ocean
火山	かざん	kazan	volcano

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>元旦のご来光を拝むために、山に登る人もいます。</p> <p><i>Gantan no go-raikō o ogamu tame ni yama ni noboru hito mo imasu.</i></p> <p>Some Japanese people go to the top of a mountain to see the sunrise on the 1st of January.</p>	<p>富士山はとても高い山です。</p> <p><i>Fuji-san wa totemo takai yama desu.</i></p> <p>Mt. Fuji is a very tall mountain.</p>
<p>日本で一番大きい島は、本州です。</p> <p><i>Nihon de ichi-ban ōkī shima wa Honshū desu.</i></p> <p>The biggest island in Japan is the main island, called Honshū.</p>	<p>日本一長い川は、信濃川です。</p> <p><i>Nihon ichi nagai kawa wa, Shinano-gawa desu.</i></p> <p>The longest river in Japan is Shinanogawa.</p>
<p>夏には、子供たちは海で手持ちの花火で遊びます。</p> <p><i>Natsu ni wa, kodomo-tachi wa umi de temochi no hanabi de asobimasu.</i></p> <p>In summer, children enjoy hand-held fireworks at the beach.</p>	<p>彼は、海で人魚を見たと言った。</p> <p><i>Kare wa, umi de ningyo o mita to itta.</i></p> <p>He said that he had seen a mermaid in the sea.</p>
<p>桜島は、まだ、毎年小さい噴火を繰り返している火山です。</p> <p><i>Sakura-jima wa, mada, maitoshi chīsai funka o kurikaeshite iru kazan desu.</i></p> <p>Sakurajima is a volcano which still has many small-scale eruptions every year.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Mountain

Japan is a mountainous country. There are a lot of volcanoes too; thanks to these volcanoes, natural hot springs or onsen, can be found across the country.

2. Sea/ocean

Since Japan is an island nation, Japanese people have always lived with the sea. Because it is a mountainous island, beach space is rather limited, but people still enjoy spending time on the beach with friends and family.

3. Island

Japan consists of 6,852 islands. The farthest north is Etorofutō and the southernmost is Okinotorishima.

4. Volcano

Japan has 110 active volcanoes in total. The most recent eruption was in 1991, by Mount Unzen in Nagasaki. While Mount Unzen has ceased volcanic activity, Sakurajima in Kagoshima is very famous for its continuing volcanic activity. Sakurajima used to be an island, but an eruption in 1914 created a road that connected it to the mainland of Kagoshima.

5. River

Japanese rivers are relatively narrow when compared to other world-famous rivers. Because of the mountainous geography and the north to south long island shape of the country, the length of Japanese rivers is also relatively short.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #12

Cities

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

12

KANJI

1. What are five major cities in Japan?
2. 1. 東京
3. 2. 大阪
4. 3. 広島
5. 4. 札幌
6. 5. 長崎

KANA

1. What are five major cities in Japan?
2. 1. とうきょう
3. 2. おおさか
4. 3. ひろしま
5. 4. さっぽろ
6. 5. ながさき

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five major cities in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Tōkyō
3. 2. Ōsaka
4. 3. Hiroshima
5. 4. Sapporo
6. 5. Nagasaki

ENGLISH

1. What are five major cities in Japan?
2. 1. Tokyo
3. 2. Osaka
4. 3. Hiroshima
5. 4. Sapporo
6. 5. Nagasaki

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
東京	とうきょう	Tōkyō	Tokyo (current capital of Japan)
大阪	おおさか	Ōsaka	Osaka

札幌	さっぽろ	Sapporo	Sapporo
長崎	ながさき	Nagasaki	Nagasaki
広島	ひろしま	Hiroshima	Hiroshima

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>日本の全人口 1 億2800万人のうち、10分の1にあたる1300万人が東京に住んでいます。</p> <p><i>Nihon no zen jinkō ichi-oku ni-sen happyaku-man-nin no uchi, jū-bun no ichi ni ataru sen san-byaku-man-nin ga Tōkyō ni sunde imasu.</i></p> <p>Out of the Japanese population of 128 million people, 13 million, which is almost one-tenth, reside in Tokyo.</p>	<p>出身は東京です。</p> <p><i>Shusshin wa Tōkyō desu.</i></p> <p>I'm from Tokyo.</p>
<p>大阪の人は、親しみやすく親切だと言われています。</p> <p><i>Ōsaka no hito wa, shitashimiyasukute shinsetsu da to iwarete imasu.</i></p> <p>It is often said that people in Osaka are generally very friendly and kind.</p>	<p>札幌市では長年にわたり、様々なスポーツのイベントが開催されています。</p> <p><i>Sapporo-shi de wa naganen ni watari, samazama na supōtsu no ibento ga kaisai sarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Sapporo city has hosted many different international sporting events over the years.</p>
<p>長崎は、第二次世界大戦中に原爆の被害を受けた二つの都市のひとつです。</p> <p><i>Nagasaki wa, dai ni-ji sekai taisenchū ni gembaku no higai o uketa futatsu no toshi no hitotsu desu.</i></p> <p>Nagasaki is one of the two cities that experienced the atomic bomb during the Second World War.</p>	<p>広島原爆ドームは、人々の平和を願う気持の象徴です。</p> <p><i>Hiroshima no genbaku dōmu wa, hitobito no heiwa o negau kimochi no shōchō desu.</i></p> <p>The Atomic Bomb Dome in Hiroshima is the symbol of the people's wish for peace.</p>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Tokyo

The capital of Japan, Tokyo is a political and business centre which has a skyline full of skyscrapers. The city is also considered to be an information hub, since a variety of

information is collected in and sent out to the provinces from Tokyo.

2. Osaka

Osaka is the second biggest city in Japan, located southwest of Tokyo. Osaka has developed as a merchant city.

3. Hiroshima

One of the two Japanese cities which experienced the atomic bomb during the Second World War. The memorial day of this event is the 6th of August. This city and Nagasaki are the only cities in the world that have actually experienced the atomic bomb, and such they are trying to put across the reality of the event to the rest of the world, with the eventual aim of the eradication of nuclear weapons and nuclear power.

4. Sapporo

Sapporo hosted the Winter Olympic Games in 1972 as the first Asian host country. Sapporo city is the political and economic centre of the prefecture of Hokkaido, with the fourth largest population in Japan.

5. Nagasaki

When the Japanese government sealed off the country to the outside world during the Edo period, there were four ports where international trade was allowed; Nagasaki was the biggest trade port under the direct control of the government.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #13

Sports

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

13

KANJI

1. What are five popular sports in Japan?
2. 1. 野球
3. 2. サッカー
4. 3. 柔道
5. 4. 相撲
6. 5. バレーボール

KANA

1. What are five popular sports in Japan?
2. 1. やきゅう
3. 2. サッカー
4. 3. じゅうどう
5. 4. すもう
6. 5. バレーボール

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular sports in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. yakyuu
3. 2. sakkā
4. 3. juudou
5. 4. sumou
6. 5. barēbōr

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular sports in Japan?
2. 1. baseball
3. 2. soccer
4. 3. judo
5. 4. sumo
6. 5. volleyball

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
野球	やきゅう	yakyū	baseball
サッカー	サッカー	sakkā	soccer, football
相撲	すもう	sumō	sumo

バレーボール	バレーボール	barēbōru	volleyball
柔道	じゅうどう	jūdō	judo (Japanese traditional martial art)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>高校生の野球大会である「甲子園」は有名な大会です。 <i>ōkōsei no yakyū taikai dearu ""kōshien"" wa yūmei na taikai desu.</i></p> <p>A famous baseball event is the "Koshien", which is a high school baseball tournament held each summer.</p>	<p>選手達が野球をしている。 <i>Senshu-tachi ga yakyū o shite iru.</i></p> <p>The players are playing baseball.</p>
<p>野球選手たちは、子供と素晴らしいひとときを過ごしました。 <i>Yakyū senshu-tachi wa kodomo to subarashii hitotoki o sugoshimashita.</i></p> <p>The baseball players had a wonderful time with the children.</p>	<p>1999年以降、日本のサッカーはJ-1 とJ-2 のふたつのリーグがあります。 <i>sen kyūhyaku kyūjū kyūnen ikō, nihon no sakkā wa jeiwan to jeitsū no futatsu no rīgu ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>Since 1999, the Japanese soccer league has had two divisions: J-1 and J-2.</p>
<p>サッカーが苦手です。 <i>Sakkā ga nigate desu.</i></p> <p>I'm bad at playing soccer.</p>	<p>近年、相撲では外国人力士が素晴らしい活躍を見せています。 <i>kin'nen, sumō dewa gaikokujin rikishi ga subarashī katsuyaku o misete imasu.</i></p> <p>Recently, foreign wrestlers have been giving impressive performances in sumo.</p>
<p>日本のバレーボールには、9人制バレーという特別な制度があります。 <i>Nihon no barēbōru niwa, kyūninsē barē toyū tokubetsuna sēdo ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>In Japanese volleyball, there is a unique system of a nine player team.</p>	<p>バレーボール部に所属していました。 <i>Barēbōru bu ni shozoku shite imashita.</i></p> <p>I used to belong to a volleyball club.</p>
<p>柔道の教えは、武術だけでなく、精神面や礼儀にも及びます。 <i>Jūdō no oshie wa, bujutsu dake denaku, seishinmen ya reigi nimo oyobimasu.</i></p> <p>Judo teaches not only martial techniques, but also spiritual lessons of good manners and respect.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Baseball

Baseball is one of the most popular sports in Japan. People of all generations enjoy playing baseball in public parks as well as watching the games at baseball stadiums.

2. Soccer

The Japanese national league, called the J-League, started in 1993. Soccer has never been as popular as baseball in Japan, but the recent impressive performances and results of both the men's and women's national teams have been attracting more and more fans.

3. Judo

The origin of judo goes back to 12th century Japan, where martial techniques were practiced amongst the samurai. Nowadays school children (especially boys) learn judo during PE class.

4. Sumo

Sumo is a Japanese national sport. In the past, there was also sumo for women, but it no longer exists at national level. The sumo ring is barred to women, and this tradition continues today.

5. Volleyball

Women's volleyball had its "golden era" during the 1960s, from which Japanese volleyball gained worldwide attention and recognition. In the Tokyo Olympic games in 1964, the Japanese national team lost only one set in five games.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #14

Recreational Activities

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

14

KANJI

1. What are five popular recreational activities in Japan?
2. 1. 温泉
3. 2. 遊園地
4. 3. 映画
5. 4. 読書
6. 5. 買い物

KANA

1. What are five popular recreational activities in Japan?
2. 1. おんせん
3. 2. ゆうえんち
4. 3. えいが
5. 4. どくしょ
6. 5. かいもの

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular recreational activities in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. onsen
3. 2. yuuenchi
4. 3. eiga
5. 4. dokusho
6. 5. kaimon

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular recreational activities in Japan?
2. 1. hot spring
3. 2. amusement park / fun fair
4. 3. movie
5. 4. reading books
6. 5. shopping

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
温泉	おんせん	onsen	hot spring, onsen
遊園地	ゆうえんち	yūenchi	amusement park, fun fair

読書	とくしょ	dokusho	reading books
買い物	かいもの	kaimono	shopping
映画	えいが	eiga	movie

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>温泉は、リラックスできるだけでなく、治療効果もあると言われています。</p> <p><i>onsen wa, rirakkusu dekiru dakedenaku, chiryō kōka mo aru to iwarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Hot springs are not only relaxing, but are also believed to have medical healing properties.</p>	<p>日本にはたくさんいい温泉がある。</p> <p><i>Nihon ni wa takusan ii onsen ga aru.</i></p> <p>There are a lot of good hot springs in Japan.</p>
<p>ディズニー・リゾートは、毎年、2400万人以上が訪れる遊園地です。</p> <p><i>Dizunī Rizōto wa, maitoshi, nisen yonhyakuman-nin ijō ga otozureru yūenchi desu.</i></p> <p>(The Japanese)Disney Resort is an amusement park that more than 24 million people visit every year.</p>	<p>日本では、秋は読書に最適の季節とされています。</p> <p><i>nihon dewa, aki wa dokusho ni saiteki no kisetsu to sarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Autumn is traditionally considered a good season for reading in Japan.</p>
<p>買い物においては、日本はまだ現金主義社会だと言えます。</p> <p><i>kaimono ni oite wa, nihon wa mada genkin shugi shakai dato iemasu.</i></p> <p>When it comes to shopping, Japan is still considered a cash-based society.</p>	<p>有名な日本人映画監督には、黒沢明、山田洋次、北野武がいます。</p> <p><i>Yūmeina nihonjin eiga kantoku ni wa, Kurosawa Akira, Yamada Yōji, Kitano Takeshi ga imasu.</i></p> <p>Some famous Japanese movie directors are Akira Kurosawa, Yoji Yamada and Takeshi Kitano.</p>
<p>私は映画が好きです。</p> <p><i>Watashi wa eiga ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like movies.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Hot spring

Due to its mountainous geography and active volcanoes, there are many hot springs in Japan. Shared public baths are an old custom in Japan and there are many bathhouses in almost every town, some of which contain natural minerals. In Japanese public baths and hot springs, people bathe nude.

2. Amusement park / fun fair

There are hundreds of amusement parks in Japan. The most popular recreational park in Japan is the Disney resort, which has two parks near Tokyo. These fantasy lands are also called *tēma pāku* (literally, "theme park").

3. Movie

Many children enjoy animated movies, whilst adults enjoy all kinds of movies. Foreign movies are usually available in both dubbed versions and subtitled versions.

4. Reading books

Reading is a very common hobby in Japan: you will often see many people reading on the train. Recently many people enjoy reading on mobile phones and tablet computers.

5. Shopping

Japanese shops often promote limited time sales, such as giving a "special discount" for a period of one hour. Any kind of shop can have such promotions or seasonal sales.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #15

Tourist Attractions and Places

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

15

KANJI

1. What are five popular tourist attractions and places in Japan?
2. 1. 金閣寺
3. 2. 東大寺
4. 3. 秋葉原
5. 4. 広島平和記念公園
6. 5. 富士山

KANA

1. What are five popular tourist attractions and places in Japan?
2. 1. きんかくじ
3. 2. とうだいじ
4. 3. あきはばら
5. 4. ひろしまへいわきねんこうえん
6. 5. ふじさん

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular tourist attractions and places in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Kinkakuji
3. 2. Tōdaiji
4. 3. Akihabara
5. 4. Hiroshima heiwa kinen kōen
6. 5. Fujisan

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular tourist attractions and places in Japan?
2. 1. Kinkaku temple
3. 2. Todai temple
4. 3. Akihabara
5. 4. Hiroshima Peace Memorial Park
6. 5. Mt. Fuji

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
金閣寺	きんかくじ	kinkakuji	Kinkaku Temple
東大寺	とうだいじ	Tōdaiji	Todai Temple

広島平和記念公園	ひろしまへいわきね んこうえん	Hiroshima heiwa kinen kōen	Hiroshima Peace Memorial Park
富士山	ふじさん	Fuji-san	Mt. Fuji
秋葉原	あきはばら	Akihabara	Akihabara

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>金閣は1950年に放火により焼失し、1955年に再建されました。</p> <p><i>Kinkaku wa sen kyūhyaku gojūnen ni hōka ni yori shōshitushi, sen kyūhyaku gojūgonen ni saiken saremashita.</i></p> <p>The original Golden Pavilion was burned down in an arson attack in 1950 and was re-constructed in 1955 as a replica of the original.</p>	<p>東大寺の敷地は、34万平方メートル以上の広さがあります。</p> <p><i>Tōdaiji no shikichi wa, sanjūyonman heihō mētoru ijō no hirosa ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>The site of the Todai temple complex has an area larger than 340,000 square meters.</p>
<p>毎年、世界中からたくさんの外国人が広島平和記念公園を訪れます。</p> <p><i>Maitoshi, sekaijū kara takusan no gaikokujin ga Hiroshima heiwa kinen kōen o otozuremasu.</i></p> <p>Every year, thousands of people from all over the world visit Hiroshima Peace Memorial Park.</p>	<p>富士山はとても高い山です。</p> <p><i>Fuji-san wa totemo takai yama desu.</i></p> <p>Mt. Fuji is a very tall mountain.</p>
<p>秋葉原には、女性がメイド姿で接客をするカフェがたくさんあります。</p> <p><i>Akihabara niwa, josei ga meido sugata de sekkyaku o suru kafe ga takusan arimasu.</i></p> <p>There are many cafes in Akihabara in which girls dressed as maids serve customers.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Kinkaku temple

The real name of Kinkaku temple is Rokuonji (Rokuon temple), but it is much better known as Kinkakuji, since the Kinkaku (Golden Pavilion) is the most famous establishment of the temple. Kinkakuji was built in 1397 in Kyoto during the Muromachi period under the rule of Yoshimitsu Ashikaga.

2. Todai temple

Todai temple is a Buddhist temple complex in Nara city which was completed in the 8th century. This temple is characterised especially by the Great Buddha Hall, which is the largest wooden building in the world, as well as by the world's largest bronze statue of Buddha Vairocana (the Great Buddha).

3. Akihabara

Akihabara is a district in Tokyo which originally developed as the main centre for electronic appliances. In recent years Akihabara has also become famous for animation, comics, and games. Since both high technology products and animation are typical Japanese things, not only Japanese people, but also many foreign tourists visit the town.

4. Hiroshima Peace Memorial Park

Hiroshima Peace Memorial Park was designed as and dedicated to the legacy of Hiroshima, which is the world's first city to suffer a nuclear bomb, as well as to the victims of that bomb. The park has a skeletal ruin of a building as a symbol of this, which is called the A-Bomb Dome.

5. Mt. Fuji

Mt. Fuji is the highest mountain in Japan at 3,776 meters. It's an active volcano located on the border of Shizuoka and Yamanashi prefectures.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #16

Common Household Items

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

16

KANJI

1. What are five common things in the home in Japan?
2. 1. 仏壇
3. 2. 神棚
4. 3. 玄関
5. 4. こたつ
6. 5. 畳

KANA

1. What are five common things in the home in Japan?
2. 1. ぶつだん
3. 2. かみだな
4. 3. げんかん
5. 4. こたつ
6. 5. たたみ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common things in the home in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. butsudan
3. 2. kamidana
4. 3. genkan
5. 4. kotatsu
6. 5. tatami

ENGLISH

1. What are five common things in the home in Japan?
2. 1. a family Buddhist altar
3. 2. a household altar
4. 3. house entrance
5. 4. table with an electric heater
6. 5. tatami mat

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
仏壇	ぶつだん	butsudan	a family Buddhist altar
神棚	かみだな	kamidana	a household altar

こたつ	こたつ	kotatsu	table with an electric heater
畳	たたみ	tatami	tatami mat
玄関	げんかん	genkan	house entrance

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>仏壇は、古くから日本の家庭において中心的な存在でした。</p> <p><i>Butsudan wa, furukukara nihon no katei ni oite chūshintekina sonzai deshita.</i></p> <p>The family Buddhist altar is traditionally an essential and spiritual center of a Japanese family.</p>	<p>神棚の一番一般的な形は、お札を中に収める、「札宮」という神棚です。</p> <p><i>kamidana no ichiban ippantekina katachi wa, ofuda o nakani osameru, "fudamiya" to yū kamidana desu.</i></p> <p>The most common type of miniature altar has a miniature shrine with a talisman inside it, which is called a "fudamiya".</p>
<p>日本の典型的な冬のイメージは、家族がこたつを囲んでミカンを食べる様子です。</p> <p><i>nihon no tenkeitekina fuyu no imēji wa, kazokuga kotatsu o kakonde mikan o taberu yōsu desu.</i></p> <p>A typical image of winter in Japan is a family sitting around a "kotatsu" eating mandarin oranges.</p>	<p>日本では、およそ9.9平方メートルの部屋を「6畳」と表すように、部屋の大きさを畳の数で表します。</p> <p><i>nihon dewa, oyoso kyū ten kyū heihō mētoru no heya o "roku jō" to arawasu yōni, heya no ōkisa o tatami no kazu de arawashimasu.</i></p> <p>The area of a room in Japan is often described by the number of tatami mats it contains, such as "6 tatami mats" for a room measuring around 9.9 square metres.</p>
<p>玄関で靴を脱いだ後は、つま先がドアの方を向くようにそろえます。</p> <p><i>genkan de kutsu o nuida ato wa, tsumasaki ga doa no hō o mukuyōni soroemasu.</i></p> <p>After taking your shoes off at the entrance, the shoes should be lined up neatly with the toes pointing towards the front door.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. A family Buddhist altar

A *butsudan* is a family Buddhist altar. The size of this altar varies, but it usually takes the form of a wooden cabinet with doors. Memorial tablets for deceased family members and ancestors are often kept inside.

2. A household altar

A *kamidana* is a miniature altar to enshrine a deity which is set on a high position on a wall. Since most Japanese live with both Shinto and Buddhist influences, a lot of mixed religious customs are found in everyday life.

3. House entrance

A Japanese house entrance is normally raised, so that people take off their shoes in the lower area before stepping up into the house. Because of this custom of taking the shoes off before entering, Japanese front doors usually open outwards.

4. Table with an electric heater

A *kotatsu* is a table with an electric heater usually covered with a blanket or other such covering. Japanese people often use a "kotatsu" instead of a normal table in winter, and sit down around the *kotatsu* with their legs under the blanket.

5. Tatami mat

Tatami mats are used as flooring in traditional Japanese rooms. Their surface is covered with woven soft rushes, and is softer than a wooden floor.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #17

Commonly Used Medicines and Drugs

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

17

KANJI

1. What are five commonly used medicines and drugs in Japan?
2. 1. 風邪薬
3. 2. 頭痛薬
4. 3. 正露丸
5. 4. 湿布
6. 5. ムヒ

KANA

1. What are five commonly used medicines and drugs in Japan?
2. 1. かぜぐすり
3. 2. ずつうやく
4. 3. せいろがん
5. 4. しっぷ
6. 5. ムヒ

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five commonly used medicines and drugs in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. kazegusuri
3. 2. zutsuugusuri
4. 3. seirogan
5. 4. shippu
6. 5. muhi

ENGLISH

1. What are five commonly used medicines and drugs in Japan?
2. 1. cold medicine
3. 2. headache medicine
4. 3. gastrointestinal medicine
5. 4. hot or cold pad used for muscle aches and injuries
6. 5. anti-histamine/anti-itch agent

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
正露丸	せいろがん	seirogan	gastrointestinal medicine

湿布	しっぷ	shippu	hot or cold pad used for muscle aches and injuries
ムヒ	ムヒ	muhi	An anti-histamine/ anti-itch agent
風邪薬	かぜぐすり	kazegusuri	cold medicine
頭痛薬	ずつうやく	zutsūyaku	headache medicine

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>正露丸はにおいが強いので、糖衣錠タイプが発売され、多くの人に好まれています。 <i>Seirogan wa nioi ga tsuyoi node, tōijō taipu ga hatsubai sare, ōku no hito ni konomarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Because of Seirogan's strong smell, the pharmaceutical company that produces it invented a sugar-coated tablet version, which many people prefer.</p>	<p>子供から大人まで、広い世代の日本人が痛みやけがに湿布を使います。 <i>kodomo kara otona made, hiroi sedai no nihonjin ga itami ya kega ni shippu o tsukaimasu.</i></p> <p>From children to the elderly, Japanese people use hot or cold pads for muscle pains and injuries.</p>
<p>ムヒは、日本で長く使われているかゆみどめです。 <i>muhi wa, nihon de nagaku tsukawareteiru kayumi dome desu.</i></p> <p>Muhi is one of the longest selling anti-itch creams in Japan.</p>	<p>かぜ薬のCMは、冬によく流れます。 <i>kazegusuri no shīemu wa, fuyu ni yoku nagaremasu.</i></p> <p>TV commercials for cold medicines are broadcast more often in winter.</p>
<p>日本では、処方箋のいない頭痛薬が約15種類もあります。 <i>Nihon dewa, shohōsen no iranai zutsūyakuga yaku jūgo shurui mo arimasu.</i></p> <p>There are around fifteen major types of headache medicines available without prescription in Japan.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Kazegusuri

It's normal for Japanese people to go see a doctor when they catch a cold. However, a variety

of cold medicines are available without prescription at pharmacies and drug stores. These medicines, called *kazegusuri*, are usually effective against many typical symptoms such as fever, runny nose, sore throats and coughs.

2. Zutsuugusuri

Pain killers are called *chintsūzai*, and the word *zutsūyaku* literally means "headache killer." Japanese people are not very familiar with medicine names such as "aspirin," so people tend to use collective terms, such as "medicine for headache."

3. Seirogan

Sērogan is a trademarked brand name of gastrointestinal medicine with an origin that dates back to the 1900s. The medicine is famous for its effectiveness, but it's also famous for its strong smell.

4. Shippu

Warm or cold packs for pain relief are popular, and are easily found at any drug store in Japan. Both cold and warm packs are used depending on the type of injury.

5. Muhi

Since there are many insects in Japan, pharmaceutical products to protect from mosquito bites and products for after being bitten are essential in summer. Muhi is one of the most famous products for calming itchiness, and is applied directly to a mosquito bite.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #18

Modes of transportation

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Cultural Insight

18

KANJI

1. What are five frequently used modes of transportation in Japan?
2. 1. 電車
3. 2. バス
4. 3. 地下鉄
5. 4. 新幹線
6. 5. 飛行機

KANA

1. What are five frequently used modes of transportation in Japan?
2. 1. でんしゃ
3. 2. バス
4. 3. ちかてつ
5. 4. しんかんせん
6. 5. ひこうき

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five frequently used modes of transportation in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. densha
3. 2. basu
4. 3. chikatetsu
5. 4. shinkansen
6. 5. hikōki

ENGLISH

1. What are five frequently used modes of transportation in Japan?
2. 1. train
3. 2. bus
4. 3. subway
5. 4. bullet train, shinkansen
6. 5. airplane

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
電車	でんしゃ	densha	train
バス	バス	basu	bus

新幹線	しんかんせん	shinkansen	bullet train, Shinkansen
飛行機	ひこうき	hikōki	airplane
地下鉄	ちかてつ	chikatetsu	subway

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ジャパン・レイル・パスは、JRのバスや電車に乗り放題の外国人向け特別割引パスです。</p> <p><i>Japan reiru pasu wa, jeiāru no basu ya densha ni norihōdai no gaikokujin muke tokubetsu waribiki pasu desu.</i></p> <p>Japan Rail pass is a special dicounted flat-rate pass available only to visitors which allows the holder to ride all JR trains as well as buses.</p>	<p>電車の切符を買います。</p> <p><i>Densha no kippu o kaimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll buy a train ticket.</p>
<p>長距離旅行には、高速バスもあります。</p> <p><i>Chōkyori ryokō ni wa, kōsokubasu mo arimasu.</i></p> <p>For long-distance joumeys, all-day and all-night buses are also available.</p>	<p>バスと電車、どちらのほうが速いですか。</p> <p><i>Basu to densha, dochira no hō ga hayai desu ka.</i></p> <p>Which is faster, a bus or a train?</p>
<p>在来線が全て禁煙なのに対し、新幹線には喫煙車両がある場合があります。</p> <p><i>Zairaisen ga subete kin'en nanoni taishi, shinkansen niwa kitsuen sharyō ga aru bāi ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>While local trains are all non smoking, some bullet trains have a few cars where smoking is allowed.</p>	<p>新幹線に乗った事がありますか。</p> <p><i>Shinkansen ni notta koto ga arimasu ka.</i></p> <p>Have you ever taken the Shinkansen?</p>
<p>日本は列島なので、飛行機はとても便利な交通手段です。</p> <p><i>Nihon wa rettō nano de, hikōki wa totemo benri na kōtsūshudan desu.</i></p> <p>Since Japan is a country with many islands, airplanes are a very convenient means of travel.</p>	<p>飛行機が苦手です。</p> <p><i>Hikōki ga nigate desu.</i></p> <p>I don't like airplanes.</p>

東京の地下鉄の駅には、地下3階まである駅もあります。
Tōkyō no chikatetsu no eki niwa, chika sangai made aru eki mo arimasu.

Some underground stations in Tokyo go as deep as three floors down.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. train

JR, or Japan Rail, is a major train network running almost all over Japan. Other than JR, there are also many local private railways which are all very punctual.

2. bus

Buses in Japan are operated by many private companies. Depending on the city, passengers enter from either the front or back of the bus. On some buses, passengers pay when they get on at the front door, and on others, they pay when they get off.

3. subway

Subways are found mainly in big cities. For instance in Tokyo, there are 13 subway lines operated by Tokyo Metro.

4. bullet train, shinkansen

The "shinkansen" is a special rapid service train (often translated as "bullet train") offered by JR. New lines are being developed to link major cities all over Japan.

5. airplane

Main cities in Japan usually have airports. Along with trains, the plane is one of the main transportation means by which people travel across Japan.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #19

Shops or Services in Town

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 5 Cultural Insight

19

KANJI

1. What are five common shops or services in town in Japan?
2. 1. コンビニ
3. 2. リフレクソロジー
4. 3. まんが喫茶
5. 4. カラオケ
6. 5. 居酒屋

KANA

1. What are five common shops or services in town in Japan?
2. 1. コンビニ
3. 2. リフレクソロジー
4. 3. まんがきさ
5. 4. カラオケ
6. 5. いざかや

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five common shops or services in town in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. konbini
3. 2. rifuressorōjī
4. 3. manga kissa
5. 4. karaoke
6. 5. izakaya

ENGLISH

1. What are five common shops or services in town in Japan?
2. 1. convenience store
3. 2. reflexology
4. 3. manga cafe
5. 4. karaoke
6. 5. Japanese drinking place

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
コンビニ	コンビニ	konbini	convenience store
リフレクソロジー	リフレクソロジー	rifuressorōjī	reflexology
カラオケ	カラオケ	karaoke	karaoke

居酒屋	いざかや	izakaya	Japanese drinking place
まんが喫茶	まんがきさ	manga kissa	comic café

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>コンビニでは宅急便を送ることもできます。</p> <p><i>konbini dewa takkyūbin o okuru koto mo dekimasu.</i></p> <p>People can send parcels using carrier services at convenience stores.</p>	<p>私はコンビニに行きます。</p> <p><i>Watashi wa konbini ni ikimasu.</i></p> <p>I'll go to the convenience store.</p>
<p>近代のストレス社会においては、多くの人が癒しやリフレクソロジーを求めています。</p> <p><i>kindai no sutoresu shakai ni oitewa, ōku no hito ga iyashi ya rifurekusoroji o motomete imasu.</i></p> <p>In a stressful modern society, many people in Japan seek relaxation in reflexology salons.</p>	<p>カラオケとは、日本語で「空のオーケストラ」という意味です。</p> <p><i>karaoke to wa, nihongo de "kara no ōkesutora" to iu imi desu.</i></p> <p>Karaoke means "empty orchestra" in Japanese.</p>
<p>カラオケに行きませんか。</p> <p><i>Karaoke ni ikimasen ka.</i></p> <p>Won't you go to Karaoke (with me)?</p>	<p>居酒屋は、通常午後5時に開店し、中には朝6時まで開いているところがあります。</p> <p><i>izakaya wa, tūjō gogo goji ni kaiten shi, nakaniwa asa rokuji made aiteiru tokoroga arimasu.</i></p> <p>Izakaya open around 5pm, and some don't close until 6am.</p>
<p>日本の居酒屋が大好きです。</p> <p><i>Nihon no izaka-ya ga daisuki desu.</i></p> <p>I love Japanese-style bars.</p>	<p>まんが喫茶の多くは、長時間滞在をうながすため、フリードリンク制をとっています。</p> <p><i>manga kissa no ōku wa, chōjikan taizai o unagasu tame, furī dorinku sei o totteimasu.</i></p> <p>Many manga cafes offer free soft drinks so that people can enjoy a long stay there.</p>

私はまんが喫茶に行きます。

Watashi wa Manga-kissa ni ikimasu.

I go to a comic café./ I'll go to a comic café.

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. convenience store

Convenience stores are one of the most typical sights in Japan. Almost every block in a city has a convenience store where people can buy a variety of items.

2. reflexology

In the last few decades, massage and relaxation salons have been becoming more and more popular in Japan. In particular the word "reflexology" has become more and more common.

3. manga cafe

A manga cafe is a place where people can read manga (comic books), and which are usually open 24/7. Many manga cafes are also internet cafes, and you usually choose at the reception desk whether you want to read comic books or use a computer.

4. karaoke

Establishments where people can enjoy singing with their friends are usually called "karaoke boxes". These karaoke boxes are often open 24/7.

5. Japanese drinking place

An "izakaya" is a casual drinking place which also offers a food menu to with the drinks. Izakaya often offer private spaces for each group of customers, so that people can enjoy drinking and chatting without worrying about the people at the next table.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #20

Popular chain stores

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

20

KANJI

1. What are five popular chain stores in Japan?
2. 1. マットモトキヨシ
3. 2. ドン・キホーテ
4. 3. ツタヤ
5. 4. セブンイレブン
6. 5. ダイソー

KANA

1. What are five popular chain stores in Japan?
2. 1. マットモトキヨシ
3. 2. ドン・キホーテ
4. 3. ツタヤ
5. 4. セブンイレブン
6. 5. ダイソー

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular chain stores in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Matsumoto Kiyoshi
3. 2. Don Kihōte
4. 3. Tsutaya
5. 4. Seibun irebun
6. 5. Daisō

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular chain stores in Japan?
2. 1. Matsumoto Kiyoshi, a drug store name
3. 2. Don Quixote, a discount store name
4. 3. Tsutaya, a CD, DVD rental shop name
5. 4. 7-Eleven, a convenience store name
6. 5. Daiso, a 100 yen shop name

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
ダイソー	ダイソー	daisō	Daiso, a 100 yen shop name
マツモトキヨシ	マツモトキヨシ	matsumoto kiyoshi	Matsumoto Kiyoshi, a Drug store name

ドン・キホーテ	ドン・キホーテ	donkihôte	Don Quixote, a discount store name
セブンイレブン	セブンイレブン	Sebun-Irebun	Seven Eleven, a convenience store name
ツタヤ	ツタヤ	tsutaya	Tsutaya, a CD, DVD rental shop name

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>ダイソーは最近、より質の高い商品を100円以上の値段で売り始めました。</p> <p><i>Daisô wa saikin, yori shitsuno takai shôhin o hyaku en ijô no nedan de urihajime mashita.</i></p> <p>Daisô has recently started to offer better quality products that cost more than 100 yen.</p>	<p>マツモトキヨシは、日本の全47都道府県のうち44都道府県に進出しています。</p> <p><i>Matsumoto Kiyoshi wa, nihon no zen yonjûnana todôfuken no uchi yonjûyon todôfuken ni shinshutsu shiteimasu.</i></p> <p>Matsumoto Kiyoshi stores are found in 44 out of 47 prefectures in Japan.</p>
<p>ドン・キホーテは、通常夜遅くまで営業しています。</p> <p><i>Donkihôte wa, tsûjô yoru osokumade eigyô shiteimasu.</i></p> <p>Don Quijote stores are usually open until very late at night.</p>	<p>セブンイレブンは、1万4千店以上の店を構える、日本で一番店舗数の多いコンビニです。</p> <p><i>Sebun irebun wa, ichiman yonsenten ijô no mise o kamaeru, nihon de ichiban temposû no ôi kombini desu.</i></p> <p>7-Eleven has the highest number of convenience stores in Japan, with over 14,000 stores.</p>
<p>セブンイレブンのパンはおいしい。</p> <p><i>Sebun-Irebun no pan wa oishii.</i></p> <p>The bread sold at Seven Eleven is good.</p>	<p>ツタヤでは、中古のCDやDVD、本、ゲームを買う事もできます。</p> <p><i>Tsutaya dewa, chûko no shidî ya dîbuidî, hon, gêmu o kaukoto mo dekimasu.</i></p> <p>Tsutaya also sells second-hand CDs, DVDs, books and video games.</p>

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Matsumoto Kiyoshi, a drug store

name

Matsumoto Kiyoshi is the biggest drugstore chain in Japan. A variety of products are available with fairly good discounts.

2. Don Quixote, a discount store name

Don Quijote is a discount store chain which has locations in most major cities in Japan. The stores display an array of products in a very limited space; stores are often described as "mazes." The range of products is vast, including leisure goods, general merchandise, food and beverages, alcohol, clothes, furniture, beauty products, perfume, party goods, and so on.

3. Tsutaya, a CD, DVD rental shop name

Tsutaya is one of the biggest rental shops in Japan for CDs and DVDs. Tsutaya offers various ways to rent CDs and DVDs, including online services in addition to renting directly at the shop.

4. 7-Eleven

7-Eleven is an American convenience store which has branched out into the Japanese market. 7-Eleven is the biggest convenience store in Japan, and is the biggest chain store in the world.

5. Daiso, a 100 yen shop name

There are many 100 yen shops in Japan and Daisō is one of the biggest chains. The quality of the products is considered rather high for the price; a fact which attracts a continuously high volume of customers.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #21

Food souvenirs

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

21

KANJI

1. What are five popular food souvenirs in Japan?
2. 1. 梅干し
3. 2. 抹茶
4. 3. 煎餅
5. 4. 餅
6. 5. ようかん

KANA

1. What are five popular food souvenirs in Japan?
2. 1. うめぼし
3. 2. まっちゃ
4. 3. せんべい
5. 4. もち
6. 5. ようかん

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five popular food souvenirs in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. umeboshi
3. 2. maccha
4. 3. senbei
5. 4. mochi
6. 5. yōkan

ENGLISH

1. What are five popular food souvenirs in Japan?
2. 1. pickled plum
3. 2. matcha, green tea
4. 3. senbei, savory rice crackers
5. 4. sticky rice cake
6. 5. sweet bean jelly made from red bean paste, agar and sugar

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
梅干し	うめぼし	umeboshi	pickled plum
抹茶	まっちゃ	maccha	green tea, matcha
餅	もち	mochi	mochi, rice cake

ようかん	ようかん	yōkan	yōkan, or sweet bean jelly
せんべい	せんべい	senbei	sembei (Japanese snack)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>梅干しは、通常ライスと一緒に食べられ、おにぎりの中身としても代表的な材料です。</p> <p><i>umeboshi wa, tsūjō raisu to issho ni taberare, onigiri no nakami to shitemo daihyōteki na zaiyō desu.</i></p> <p>Pickled plums are usually eaten with rice, and are also a typical ingredient for rice balls.</p>	<p>抹茶の粉は溶けやすいので、バニラアイスと混ぜたり、抹茶パウンドケーキに使用したり、いろいろな方法で楽しめます。</p> <p><i>matcha no kona wa tokeyasui node, banira aisu to mazetari, matcha paundo kēki ni shiyō shitari, iroirona hōhō de tanoshimemasu.</i></p> <p>Since matcha powder melts easily, it's enjoyed in various ways, such as mixed into vanilla ice cream and in matcha pound cake.</p>
<p>切り餅は焼いたり料理したりして食べます。</p> <p><i>Kirimochi wa yaitari ryōri shitari shite tabemasu.</i></p> <p>Cut mochi is enjoyed either grilled or cooked.</p>	<p>お正月には、地域でもちつき大会が行われます。</p> <p><i>O-shōgatsu ni wa, chiiki de mochitsuki taikai ga okonawaremasu.</i></p> <p>There are glutinous rice-pounding events held locally in Japan on New Year's Day.</p>
<p>ようかんは、とても甘いので苦い抹茶とよく合います。</p> <p><i>Yōkan wa, totemo amai no de nigai matcha to yoku aimasu.</i></p> <p>Sweet bean jelly is very sweet, so it goes well with a bitter green tea called "matcha."</p>	<p>日本の典型的なスナックは、煎餅と緑茶です。</p> <p><i>nihon no tenkeiteki na sunakku wa, senbei to ryokucha desu.</i></p> <p>A typical Japanese snack is senbei and green tea.</p>

GRAMMAR

What are five popular food souvenirs in Japan?

1. 梅干し
2. 抹茶
3. 煎餅

4. 餅

5. ようかん

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. pickled plum

Umeboshi are pickled plums. The fruits of the plum blossom are dried under the sun and then pickled with salt. Umeboshi are typically salty and extremely sour.

2. matcha, green tea

Matcha is powdered green tea with a deep bitter taste. At traditional Japanese tea ceremony, the tea served is this type of green tea - matcha.

3. senbei, savory rice crackers

Sembei is a kind of hard rice cracker. They come in various shapes and flavors, and are available at almost any Japanese supermarket. The most basic flavors are soy sauce and salt.

4. sticky rice cake

Mochi is a rice cake made of glutinous rice. Fresh mochi is usually sold in traditional sweet shops, but cut mochi (called "kiri mochi"), which is produced and packed in factories, is available at supermarkets.

5. sweet bean jelly made from red bean paste, agar and sugar

Yōkan, or sweet bean jelly, is made from red bean paste, agar and sugar. *Mizu-yōkan* is more watery, and typically enjoyed in summer.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #22

Historical figures

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

22

KANJI

1. Who are five famous historical figures in Japan?
2. 1. 聖徳太子
3. 2. 織田信長
4. 3. 徳川家光
5. 4. 坂本竜馬
6. 5. 伊藤博文

KANA

1. Who are five famous historical figures in Japan?
2. 1. しょうとくたいし
3. 2. おだのぶなが
4. 3. とくがわいえみつ
5. 4. さかもとりょうま
6. 5. いとうひろぶみ

ROMANIZATION

1. Who are five famous historical figures in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Shōtoku Taishi
3. 2. Oda Nobunaga
4. 3. Tokugawa Iemitsu
5. 4. Sakamoto Ryōma
6. 5. Itō Hirobumi

ENGLISH

1. Who are five famous historical figures in Japan?
2. 1. Prince Shotoku
3. 2. Nobunaga Oda
4. 3. Iemitsu Tokugawa
5. 4. Ryoma Sakamoto
6. 5. Hirobumi Ito

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
聖徳太子	しょうとくたいし	Shōtoku Taishi	Prince Shotoku
織田信長	おだのぶなが	Oda Nobunaga	Nobunaga Oda
徳川家光	とくがわいえみつ	Tokugawa Iemitsu	Iemitsu Tokugawa

坂本竜馬	さかもとりょうま	Sakamoto Ryōma	Ryoma Sakamoto
伊藤博文	いとうひろぶみ	Itō Hirobumi	Hirobumi Ito

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>聖徳太子の肖像画は、1930年以降、7回もお札に印刷されました。</p> <p><i>Shōtokutaishi no shōzōga wa, sen kyūhyaku sanjū nen ikō, nanakai mo osatsu ni insatsu saremashita.</i></p> <p>The image of Prince Shotoku has been printed on seven different banknotes in total since 1930.</p>	<p>織田信長は、子供の頃、変わった行動のせいで「尾張の大うつけ」と呼ばれていました。</p> <p><i>Oda Nobunaga wa, kodomo no koro, kawatta kōdō no sei de "Owari no ōtsuke" to yobarete imashita.</i></p> <p>In his childhood, Nobunaga Oda was called "the fool of the Owari region" because of his bizarre behaviour.</p>
<p>徳川家光の統治は、劇的な変化だったとされています。</p> <p><i>Tokugawa Iemitsu no tōchi wa, gekiteki na henka datta to sareteimasu.</i></p> <p>The rule of Iemitsu Tokugawa is considered to mark a dramatic change in era.</p>	<p>坂本竜馬は、長崎に海軍貿易会社を設立しました。</p> <p><i>Sakamoto Ryōma wa, Nagasaki ni kaigun bōeki gaisha o setsuritsu shimashita.</i></p> <p>Ryoma Sakamoto founded a private navy and trading company in Nagasaki.</p>
<p>伊藤博文は、合計4回総理大臣に選ばれました。</p> <p><i>Itō Hirobumi wa, gōkei yonkai sōridaijin ni erabaremashita.</i></p> <p>Hirobumi Ito was chosen as Prime Minister four times.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Prince Shotoku

Prince Shotoku was a regent and politician who lived during the Asuka period under the empress Suiko. He established a centralised government, adopting systems and culture from continental countries. Two of his successful achievements were the 12 level Cap and Rank System, established in the year 603, and the 17-article constitution, established in 720.

2. Nobunaga Oda

Nobunaga Oda was the man who was the origin of the unification of Japan, and who is known for his innovative tactics. He was also keen to accept new things brought to Japan from abroad, and curious about foreign products. Nobunaga Oda is one of the greatest warlords in Japanese history.

3. Iemitsu Tokugawa

Iemitsu Tokugawa was the third "shogun", or hereditary military dictator, of the Tokugawa dynasty during the Edo period. Iemitsu Tokugawa established the domestic ruling system and sealed Japan off from both commerce and communication with foreign countries.

4. Ryoma Sakamoto

Ryoma Sakamoto was one of the leaders of the rebellion which overthrew the Tokugawa Shogunate and brought about the Meiji Restoration. Ryoma worked as a negotiator for the secret alliance between Chōshū and Satsuma provinces, which had been enemies for a long time. This alliance was the key to the success of the Meiji Restoration.

5. Hirobumi Ito

Hirobumi Ito was the first Prime Minister of Japan. He worked on the Meiji Constitution which was promulgated in February 1889.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #23

Natural Disasters

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Grammar
- 5 Cultural Insight

23

KANJI

1. What are five natural disasters that can happen in Japan?
2. 1. 地震
3. 2. 津波
4. 3. 台風
5. 4. 雪崩
6. 5. 集中豪雨

KANA

1. What are five natural disasters that can happen in Japan?
2. 1. じしん
3. 2. つなみ
4. 3. たいふう
5. 4. なだれ
6. 5. しゅうちゅうごう

ROMANIZATION

1. What are five natural disasters that can happen in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. jishin
3. 2. tsunami
4. 3. taifū
5. 4. nadare
6. 5. shūchūgōu

ENGLISH

1. What are five natural disasters that can happen in Japan?
2. 1. earthquake
3. 2. tsunami / seismic sea wave
4. 3. typhoon
5. 4. avalanche
6. 5. cloudburst

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
雪崩	なだれ	nadare	avalanche
集中豪雨	しゅうちゅうごうう	shūchūgōu	torrential rains
地震	じしん	jishin	earthquake

津波	つなみ	tsunami	tsunami, seismic sea wave
台風	たいふう	taifū	typhoon

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>冬と春の間は、天気予報で雪崩に対する注意を呼びかけます。</p> <p><i>fuyu to haru no aida wa, tenki yohō de nadare ni taisuru chūi o yobikakemasu.</i></p> <p>During winter and spring, weather forecasters often call people's attention to avalanches.</p>	<p>日本では、台風や梅雨前線の影響で集中豪雨に襲われることがよくあります。</p> <p><i>nihon dewa, taifū ya baiu zensen no eikyō de shūchū gōu ni osowarerukoto ga yoku arimasu.</i></p> <p>Typhoons and fronts of rain often bring about cloudbusts in Japan.</p>
<p>日本の子供は、学校の避難訓練で、地震の際に身を守る方法を学びます。</p> <p><i>nihon no kodomo wa, gakkō no hinan kunren de, jishin no sai ni mi o mamoru hōhō o manabimasu.</i></p> <p>Japanese school children have periodic earthquake drills to teach them how to protect themselves in the event of an earthquake.</p>	<p>昨日、地震がありました。</p> <p><i>Kinō, jishin ga arimashita.</i></p> <p>We had an earthquake last night.</p>
<p>2011年3月、北日本では地震の後に巨大津波が押し寄せ、多くの命が失われました。</p> <p><i>nesen jūichi nen san gatsu, kita nihon dewa jishin no ato ni kyodai tsunami ga oshiyose, ōkuno inochi ga ushinaware mashita.</i></p> <p>tsunami destroyed several cities in North Japan, and thousands of people lost their lives.</p>	<p>この地震による津波の心配はありません。</p> <p><i>Kono jishin ni yoru tsunami no shinpai wa arimasen.</i></p> <p>There's no threat of a tsunami resulting from this earthquake.</p>
<p>台風が上陸すると、交通機関がまひします。</p> <p><i>taifū ga jōriku suruto, kōtsūkikan ga mahi shimasu.</i></p> <p>When typhoons move across Japan, public transportation cannot function properly.</p>	<p>台風で、木が倒れた。</p> <p><i>Taifū de ki ga taoreta.</i></p> <p>A tree fell over due to the typhoon.</p>

GRAMMAR

What are five natural disasters that can happen in Japan?

1. 地震
2. 津波
3. 台風
4. 雪崩
5. 集中豪雨

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. earthquake

Since Japan is located above several oceanic plates and has active faults, earthquakes are quite a common occurrence all over the country. One of the biggest and the most recent was the Great East Japan Earthquake, which happened in March 2011

2. tsunami / seismic sea wave

When earthquakes happen near or under the ocean, a tsunami often follows soon afterwards. Due to the fact that Japan is surrounded by ocean, tsunamis are part of the "set" that comes with an earthquake that people have to be reminded to be wary of.

3. typhoon

Typhoons often occur on the sea in the south of Japan. Typhoons often hit Japan at autumn time, passing through the more northern islands of Japan.

4. avalanche

Mountainous terrain dominates over 70% of Japan's land. People enjoy visiting mountain areas throughout the year, but during the winter and spring mountaineers may encounter avalanches.

5. cloudburst

There are several reasons behind torrential rains in Japan, including typhoons and seasonal rain fronts. During the summer, torrential rains can also happen due to cumulonimbus clouds.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #24

Musicians

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

24

KANJI

1. Who are five famous musicians in Japan?
2. 1. 小澤征爾
3. 2. 坂本九
4. 3. 美空ひばり
5. 4. 氷川きよし
6. 5. 嵐

KANA

1. Who are five famous musicians in Japan?
2. 1. おざわせいじ
3. 2. さかもときゅう
4. 3. みそらひばり
5. 4. ひかわきよし
6. 5. あらし

ROMANIZATION

1. Who are five famous musicians in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Ozawa Seiji
3. 2. Sakamoto Kyū
4. 3. Misora Hibari
5. 4. Hikawa Kiyoshi
6. 5. Arashi

ENGLISH

1. Who are five famous musicians in Japan?
2. 1. Seiji Ozawa, a world-famous conductor
3. 2. Kyu Sakamoto, a legendary singer and actor
4. 3. Hibari Misora, a famous enka singer
5. 4. Kiyoshi Hikawa, a young enka singer
6. 5. Arashi, a popular male pop group

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
小澤征爾	おざわせいじ	ozawa seiji	Seiji Ozawa, a world-famous conductor

坂本九	さかもときゅう	Sakamoto Kyū	Kyu Sakamoto, a legendary singer and actor
美空ひばり	みそらひばり	Misora Hibari	Hibari Misora, a famous enka singer
氷川きよし	ひかわきよし	Hikawa Kiyoshi	Kiyoshi Hikawa, a young enka singer
嵐	あらし	Arashi	Arashi, a popular male pop group

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>小澤征爾は、わずか38歳でボストン交響楽団の音楽監督に就任した。</p> <p><i>Ozawa Seiji wa, wazuka sanjū hassai de Bosuton kōkyō gakudan no ongaku kantoku ni shūnin shita.</i></p> <p>Seiji Ozawa became the music director of the Boston Symphony Orchestra at just 38 years of age.</p>	<p>坂本九のベストヒットは、英語では「スキヤキ」として知られる「上を向いて歩こう」という歌です。</p> <p><i>Sakamoto Kyū no besuto hitto wa, eigo dewa "Sukiyaki" to shite shirareru "ue o muite arukō" toyū uta desu.</i></p> <p>Kyu Sakamoto's best known song is "Ue o Muite Arukō", or "Walk Looking Upward", which is known as "Sukiyaki" in English.</p>
<p>美空ひばりは、女性初の国民栄誉賞受賞者です。</p> <p><i>Misora Hibari wa, josei hatsu no kokumin eiyoshō jushōsha desu.</i></p> <p>Hibari Misora is the first woman to receive the People's Honour Award.</p>	<p>氷川きよしの演歌は、演歌とポップの融合のような歌です。</p> <p><i>Hikawa Kiyoshi no enka wa, enka to poppu no yūgō no yōna uta desu.</i></p> <p>Enka songs by Kiyoshi Hikawa sound like a mix of enka and pop music.</p>
<p>1999年のデビュー以降、嵐は日本国内外で人気を高めてきました。</p> <p><i>sen kyūhyaku kyūjū kyūnen no debyū ikō, Arashi wa nihon koku naigai de ninki o takamete kimashita.</i></p> <p>Since their debut in 1999, Arashi has become more and more popular both in Japan and abroad.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Seiji Ozawa, a world-famous

conductor

Seiji Ozawa is a world-famous Japanese orchestra conductor. He's also known as a music director and as a principal conductor of opera.

2. Kyu Sakamoto, a legendary singer and actor

Kyu Sakamoto was a singer and actor. His songs were great hits all over the world, selling 15 million records in total. He lost his life in a plane crash in 1985 aged 43.

3. Hibari Misora, a famous enka singer

Hibari Misora is considered the greatest "diva" in Japan. She started her life as actress at 8 years old, but it took about a year to convince people in the music industry to accept her mature talent as a singer.

4. Kiyoshi Hikawa, a young enka singer

Kiyoshi Hikawa is a young Japanese enka singer. Enka is a popular type of Japanese music which is made to resemble traditional Japanese songs, and is considered to be a genre popular with older people. Kiyoshi Hikawa made an impact among enka singers older than he, and made enka more casual and approachable for the younger generation.

5. Arashi, a popular male pop group

Arashi is a group managed by Johnny & Associates, Inc., a company which manages many other boy pop idol groups. Amongst many similar "Johnny's" groups, what makes Arashi different is that each member has his own different strengths apart from singing and dancing; one member even reads the news.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Essential Japanese Vocabulary S1 #25

Writers

CONTENTS

- 2 Kanji
- 2 Kana
- 2 Romanization
- 3 English
- 3 Vocabulary
- 4 Sample Sentences
- 4 Cultural Insight

25

KANJI

1. Who are five famous writers in Japan?
2. 1. 紫式部
3. 2. 川端康成
4. 3. 大江健三郎
5. 4. 村上春樹
6. 5. 樋口一葉

KANA

1. Who are five famous writers in Japan?
2. 1. むらさきしきぶ
3. 2. かわばたやすなり
4. 3. おおえけんざぶろう
5. 4. むらかみはるき
6. 5. ひぐちいちょう

ROMANIZATION

1. Who are five famous writers in Japan?

CONT'D OVER

2. 1. Murasakishikibu
3. 2. Kawabata Yasunari
4. 3. Ōe Kenzaburō
5. 4. Murakami Haruki
6. 5. Higuchi Ichiyō

ENGLISH

1. Who are five famous writers in Japan?
2. 1. Lady Murasaki, a Japanese novelist and poet of the Heian period
3. 2. Yasunari Kawabata, a short story writer and novelist
4. 3. Kenzaburo Oe, an author of contemporary literature
5. 4. Haruki Murakami, a Japanese writer and translator
6. 5. Ichiyo Higuchi, a female Japanese writer of the 19th century

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
樋口一葉	ひぐちいちよう	Higuchi Ichiyō	Ichiyo Higuchi, a female Japanese writer of the 19th century

紫式部	むらさきしきぶ	Murasakishikibu	Lady Murasaki, a Japanese novelist and poet of the Heian period
川端康成	かわばたやすなり	Kawabata Yasunari	Yasunari Kawabata, a short story writer and novelist
村上春樹	むらかみはるき	Murakami Haruki	Haruki Murakami, a Japanese writer and translator
大江健三郎	おおえけんざぶろう	Ōe Kenzaburō	Kenzaburo Oe, an author of contemporary literature

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>樋口一葉は、女性として初めてお札の肖像になりました。</p> <p><i>Higuchi Ichiyō wa, josei toshite hajimete osatsu no shōzō ni narimashita.</i></p> <p>Ichijo Higuchi is the first woman whose likeness was printed on banknotes.</p>	<p>紫式部は、「源氏物語」でよく知られています。</p> <p><i>Murasakishikibu wa, "genji monogatari" de yoku shirarete imasu.</i></p> <p>Lady Murasaki is best known for her long story "The Tale of Genji".</p>
<p>日本人のほとんどの人は川端康成の「雪国」や「伊豆の踊り子」を読んだことがあります。</p> <p><i>nihonjin no hotondo no hito wa Kawabata Yasunari no "Yukiguni" ya "Izu no Odoriko" o yonda kotoga arimasu.</i></p> <p>Almost all Japanese people have read Yasunari Kawabata's novels "Snow Country" and "the Dancing Girl of Izu".</p>	<p>村上春樹の「ノルウェイの森」は430万部を売り上げ、「村上ブーム」のきっかけとなった。</p> <p><i>Haruki Murakami no "Noruwei no mori" wa yonsen gohyakuman bu o uriage, "Murakami būmu" no kikkake to natta.</i></p> <p>Haruki Murakami's novel Norwegian Wood triggered the "Murakami boom", with total sales of 4.5 million copies.</p>
<p>「万延元年のフットボール」は、大江健三郎の代表作です。</p> <p><i>"Man'nen gan'nen no futtobōrā" wa, Ōe Kenzaburō no daihyōsaku desu.</i></p> <p>"The Silent Cry" is one of Kenzaburo Oe's best known works.</p>	

CULTURAL INSIGHT

1. Lady Murasaki, a Japanese novelist and poet of the Heian period

Murasakishikibu was a Japanese novelist and poet in the Heian period. Her talent, which was evident from her childhood, continually surprised the people around her.

2. Yasunari Kawabata, a short story writer and novelist

Yasunari Kawabata was a Japanese short story writer and novelist who was the first Japanese writer to receive the Nobel Prize for Literature. Extracts from his work are often used in Japanese high school and junior high school textbooks and exams.

3. Kenzaburo Oe, an author of contemporary literature

Kenzaburo Oe is a Japanese author of contemporary literature. His works deal with political and social issues, including nuclear weapons and nuclear power.

4. Haruki Murakami, a Japanese writer and translator

Haruki Murakami is a Japanese writer and translator. His works are surreal and unique, and are highly appreciated worldwide.

5. Ichiyo Higuchi, a female Japanese writer of the 19th century

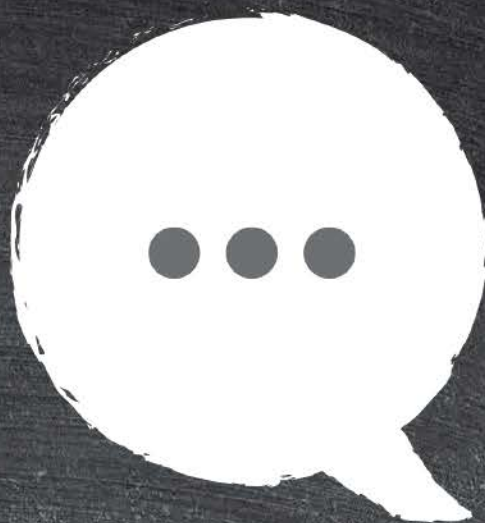
Ichiyo Higuchi (a pen name) is a female Japanese writer of the late 19th century. One of her best known works is "Takekurabe" (meaning "comparing heights", and translated as "Child's Play").



If you love the **Japanese** language, then you'll love this!

Get our Complete **Japanese** Learning Program
at **JapanesePod101.com**.

- Speak **Japanese** From Your First Lesson
- Access hundreds of Audio & Video Courses by Real Teachers
- Get **FREE** New Lessons Every Week
- Learn Anywhere, Anytime on Any Android Device or Computer



Go to
JapanesePod101.com
and sign up for your

FREE

Lifetime Account!



LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #1 New Year's Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#1

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
三日	さんがにち	sanganichi	the first three days of the New Year
あけましておめでとうございます。	あけましておめでとうございます。	Akemashite omedetō gozaimasu.	Happy New Year. (formal)
雑煮	ぞうに	zōni	Japanese soup containing mochi rice cakes
おせち料理	おせちりょうり	osechi ryōri	Food served during the New Year's Holidays
お年玉	おとしだま	otoshidama	New Year's gift of money
袋	ふくろ	fukuro	bag, sack
二年参り	にねんまいり	ninen-mairi	the practice of making a midnight visit during New Year's Day
元旦	がんたん	gantān	New Year's Day

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>みなさん、あけましておめでとうございます。</p> <p><i>Mina-san, akemashite omedetō gozaimasu.</i></p> <p>Happy new year, everyone.</p>	<p>お年玉をもらいました。</p> <p><i>Otoshidama o moraimashita.</i></p> <p>I received a gift of New Year's money.</p>
<p>元旦に神社へお参りに行く。</p> <p><i>Gantan ni jinja e o-mairi ni iku.</i></p> <p>I visit a shrine on New Year's Day.</p>	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #2 Coming of Age Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#2

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
お盆	おぼん	O-bon	Bon Festival
振袖	ふりそで	furisode	long-sleeved kimono worn by unmarried women
小豆	あずき	azuki	red beans
成人の日	せいじんのひ	Seijin no hi	Coming of Age Day

SAMPLE SENTENCES

お盆は祖先をまつる期間なので、祖先の霊を迎える前にお墓を掃除するのは大切なことです。

O-bon wa sosen o matsu kikan nanode, sosen no rei o mukaeru mae ni o-haka o sōji suru no wa taisetsu na koto desu.

O-bon is a period of honoring one's ancestors, so it's important to clean the family graves before welcoming their spirits.

小豆が好きです。

Azuki ga suki desu.

I like red beans.

成人の日には、20歳をむかえる多くの男女が着物や袴を着ます。

Seijin no hi ni wa, hatachi o mukaeru ōku no danjo ga kimono ya hakama o kimasu.

On Coming of Age Day, many men and women who are or will be twenty years old by the end of March that year wear traditional Japanese clothes called "kimono" and "hakama".

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #3 Setsubun

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

3

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
節分	せつぶん	setsubun	day for the end of winter
立春	りっしゅん	risshun	the first day of spring
立夏	りっか	rikka	the first day of summer
立秋	りっしゅう	risshū	the first day of fall
立冬	りっとう	rittō	the first day of winter
鬼は外、福は内。	おにはそと、ふくはうち。	Oni wa soto, fuku wa uchi.	Devils out, fortune in.
福豆	ふくまめ	fukumame	fortune beans
年男	としおとこ	toshiotoko	a man born in a year with the same Chinese zodiac sign as the current year
年女	としおんな	toshionna	a woman born in a year with the same Chinese zodiac sign as the current year
恵方巻	えほうまき	ehōmaki	Ehomaki (sushi roll eaten during setsubun)

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>今日は立春です。 <i>Kyō wa risshun desu.</i></p> <p>Today is the first day of spring.</p>	<p>鬼は外、福は内！ <i>Oni wa soto, fuku wa uchi!</i></p> <p>Devils out, fortune in!</p>
--	--

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #4

National Foundation Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

4

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
紀元節	きげんせつ	kigensetsu	The old name of National Foundation Day
天照大神	あまてらすおおみかみ	Amaterasu ōmikami	The Goddess of the Sun
明治神宮	めいじじんぐう	Meiji jingū	Meiji Shrine
紀元祭	きげんさい	kigensai	ceremonies commemorating the founding of Japan
皇紀	こうき	kōki	Imperial era
日本書紀	にほんしょき	Nihon Shoki	Chronicles of Japan
建国記念の日	けんこくきねんのひ	Kenkoku kinen no hi	National Foundation Day

SAMPLE SENTENCES

建国記念の日は、旧暦では元旦です。

Kenkoku kinen no hi wa, kyūreki de wa Gantan desu.

In the lunisolar calendar, Japan's National Foundation Day falls on New Year's Day.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #5 Valentine's Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

5

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
義理チョコ	ぎりチョコ	girichoko	Chocolate given out of duty
本命チョコ	ほんめいちょこ	honmei choko	chocolate given to the one you are serious about
友チョコ	ともちょこ	tomo choko	chocolate given to friends
バレンタイン・デー	バレンタイン・デー	Barentain Dē	Valentine's Day

SAMPLE SENTENCES

義理チョコをたくさんもらった。

Girichoko o takusan moratta.

I got many obligation chocolates.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #6 Japanese Doll's Festival

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary

6

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
雛祭り	ひなまつり	hinamatsuri	Girls' (dolls') Festival (March 3rd)
流し雛	ながしびな	nagashibina	paper dolls used as room decorations in order to protect one's daughter from calamity
菱餅	ひしもち	hishimochi	diamond shaped rice cake
ひなあられ	ひなあられ	hina-arare	sweet rice crackers
ちらし寿司	ちらしずし	chirashizushi	sushi with seafood or vegetables on top
初節句	はつぜっく	hatsu-zekku	baby's first annual festival
桃の節句	もものせっく	momo no sekku	Peach Festival (doll festival on March 3rd)

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #7

White Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

#7

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
ホワイト・デー	ホワイト・デー	howaito dē	White Day, March 14th, the day guys return the favor and give sweets to girls that gave them chocolate or sweets on V-day
お菓子	おかし	o-kashi	sweets, candy, confectionery
雑誌	ざっし	zasshi	journal, magazine, periodical
お返し	おかえし	okaeshi	return gift

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>お菓子を作ることが好きです。 <i>O-kashi o tsukuru koto ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like making sweets.</p>	<p>本屋で雑誌を買いました。 <i>Hon'ya de zasshi o kaimashita.</i></p> <p>I bought a magazine at the bookstore.</p>
<p>バレンタインデーのお返しをもらった。 <i>Barentaindē no o-kaeshi o moratta.</i></p> <p>I got a return gift on Valentine's Day.</p>	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #8 Vernal Equinox

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary

8

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
秋分の日	しゅうぶんのひ	Shūbun no Hi	Autumnal Equinox Day	noun
おはぎ	おはぎ	ohagi	rice dumpling covered and filled with sweet bean jam	
ぼた餅	ぼたもち	botamochi	rice dumpling covered with bean paste	noun
春分の日	しゅんぶんのひ	Shunbun no Hi	Vernal Equinox Day	noun

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #9

Graduation and Entrance Ceremony

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

9

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English
卒業式	そつぎょうしき	sotsugyōshiki	graduation ceremony
着物	きもの	kimono	kimono
袴	はかま	hakama	hakama
君が代	きみがよ	Kimigayo	title of Japanese national anthem
蛍の光	ほたるのひかり	Hotaru no Hikari	Auld Lang Syne

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>卒業式に何を着るか迷っている。 <i>Sotsugyōshiki ni nani o kiru ka mayotte iru.</i></p> <p>I am wondering what I should wear at the graduation ceremony.</p>	<p>私は着物が好きです。 <i>Watashi wa kimono ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like kimonos.</p>
---	---

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #10 Cherry Blossom Viewing

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary

10

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
豊太閤花見行列	ほうたいこうは なみぎょうれつ	Hōtaikō Hanami Gyōretsu	Hanami Parade	proper noun
醍醐寺	だいごじ	Daigo-ji	Daigo-ji temple	proper noun
花見	はなみ	hanami	cherry blossom viewing, flower viewing	
安土桃山時代	あづちももやま じだい	Azuchi- Momoyama jidai	Azuchi- Momoyama period	
場所取り	ばしょとり	basho tori	hold a place, save a spot, grab a place	noun phrase
豊臣秀吉	とよとみひでよ し	Toyotomi Hideyoshi	Toyotomi Hideyoshi	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1

#11

Showa Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

11

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
天皇	てんのう	tennō	the emperor of Japan	noun
昭和	しょうわ	shōwa	the Showa Period	noun
明治神宮会館	めいじじんぐか いかん	Meiji Jingu Kaikan	Meiji Jingū shrine	proper noun
昭和の日	しょうわのひ	Shōwa no hi	Showa Day	noun
緑の日	みどりのひ	Midori no Hi	Greenery Day	noun
明治神宮	めいじじんぐう	Meiji jingū	Meiji Shrine	proper noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

天皇は忙しいです。

Tennō wa isogashii desu.

The emperor of Japan is busy.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #12 Constitution Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

12

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
正義	せいぎ	seigi	justice, right	noun
司法省	しほうしょう	Shihō shō	Department of Justice	noun
憲法	けんぽう	kenpō	constitution	noun
憲法記念日	けんぽうきねん び	Kenpō kinenbi	Constitution Memorial Day	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

その国は海外での軍事力行使を憲法により禁止されています。

Sono kuni wa kaigai de no gunjiryoku kōshi o kenpō ni yori kinshi sarete imasu.

That country is prohibited by its constitution from exercising military force overseas.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #13 Boys' Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

13

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
五月人形	ごがつにんぎょう	五月人形	May doll	noun
登龍	とうりゅう	Tōryū	dangerous river appeared in an old Chinese tale	noun
雛祭り	ひなまつり	hinamatsuri	Girls' (dolls') Festival (March 3rd)	noun
端午の節句	たんごのせっく	tango no sekku	the Boys' Festival	noun
侍	さむらい	samurai	samurai, warrior in the Edo period	noun
金太郎	きんたろう	Kintarō	the Golden Boy	proper noun
柏餅	かしわもち	kashiwamochi	rice cakes wrapped in oak leaves	noun
柏	かしわ	kashiwa	oak tree	noun
粽	ちまき	chimaki	a food derived from China made by wrapping steamed glutinous rice with leaves such as bamboo grass	noun
さけ	さけ	sake	alcohol	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

今日は端午の節句だ。

Kyō wa tango no sekku da.

Today is Boys' Festival.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1

#14

Star Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

14

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
祭り	まつり	matsuri	festival	noun
笹飾り	ささかぜり	sasakazari	hanging decorations	noun
彦星	ひこぼし	彦星	the cow herder	proper noun
焼きそば	やきそば	yakisoba	(thin)fried noodles	noun
織姫	おりひめ	Orihime	the weaving princess	proper noun
仙台	せんだい	Sendai	Sendai (place in Japan)	proper noun
七夕	たなばた	Tanabata	The Star Festival	noun
たこ焼き	たこやき	takoyaki	octopus balls	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>祭りがある時は、よく花火もあげられます。</p> <p><i>Matsuri ga aru toki wa, yoku hanabi mo ageraremasu.</i></p> <p>When there's a festival, fireworks are often also set off.</p>	<p>七夕に、願い事を書く習慣があります。</p> <p><i>Tanabata ni negaigoto o kaku shūkan ga arimasu.</i></p> <p>We write our wishes in the Star Festival.</p>
---	--

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #15 O-Bon, Festival of Souls

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

15

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
阿波踊り	あわおどり	Awa odori	Awa dance	noun
お盆休み	おぼんやすみ	o-bon yasumi	Bon vacation	noun
盆踊り	ぼんおどり	bon odori	Bon Festival dance	noun
休み	やすみ	yasumi	holiday, time off	noun
お盆	おぼん	O-bon	Bon Festival	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>1週間のお休みをください。 <i>I-sshūkan no o-yasumi o kudasai.</i></p> <p>Please give me a week off.</p>	<p>お盆は祖先をまつる期間なので、祖先の霊を迎える前にお墓を掃除するのは大切なことです。 <i>O-bon wa sosen o matsu kikan nanode, sosen no rei o mukaeru mae ni o-haka o sōji suru no wa taisetsu na koto desu.</i></p> <p>O-bon is a period of honoring one's ancestors, so it's important to clean the family graves before welcoming their spirits.</p>
---	---

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #16

Respect for the Aged Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

16

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
卒寿	そつじゅ	sotsuju	90th birthday	noun
長寿	ちょうじゅ	chōju	longevity	noun
傘寿	さんじゅ	sanju	80th birthday	noun
敬老の日	けいろうのひ	Keirō no hi	Respect for the Aged Day	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

敬老の日には、祖父母に感謝の気持ちを伝えます。

Keirō no hi ni wa, sofubo ni kansha no kimochi o tsutaemasu.

Japanese people show appreciation for their grandparents on Respect for the Aged Day.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #17 Autumnal Equinox

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary

17

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
お萩	おはぎ	ohagi	a Japanese sweet cooked grains of rice are crushed slightly and then covered with bean paste	noun
萩	はぎ	hagi	lespedeza	noun
皇霊祭	こうれいさい	Kōreisai	equinoctial ceremony held by the emperor at the shrine of imperial ancestors	noun
秋分	しゅうぶん	shūbun	autumnal equinox	noun

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #18 Moon-viewing

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

18

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
月見	つきみ	tsukimi	moon viewing	noun
月見そば	つきみそば	tsukimi soba	moon soba	noun
うどん	うどん	udon	udon, Japanese wheat noodle	noun
そば	そば	soba	soba, buckwheat noodles	noun
月見うどん	つきみうどん	tsukimi udon	moon udon noodles	noun
十五夜	じゅうごや	jūgoya	full moon night	noun
中秋の名月	ちゅうしゅうの めいげつ	chūshū no meigetsu	harvest moon	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

そばが食べたいです。

Soba ga tabetai desu.

I want to eat buckwheat noodles.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #19 Sports Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

19

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
オリンピック	オリンピック	orinpikku	the Olympics	noun
綱引き	つなひき	tsunahiki	tug of war	noun
体育の日	たいいくのひ	taiiku no hi	Health and Sports Day	noun
運動会	うんどうかい	undōkai	sports festival	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

彼女は、オリンピックで活躍した。

Kanojo wa Orinpikku de katsuyaku shita.

She gave a great performance at the Olympics.

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #20 Culture Day

CONTENTS

2 Vocabulary

20

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
小沢征爾	おざわせいじ	Ozawa Seiji	Seiji Ozawa, world- renowned Japanese conductor	proper noun
安藤忠雄	あんどうただお	Andō Tadao	Tadao Ando, Japanese architect	proper noun
三宅一生	みやけいっせい	Miyake Issei	Issey Miyake, famous Japanese fashion designer	proper noun
舞楽	ぶがく	bugaku	court dances and music	noun
文化の日	ぶんかのひ	bunka no hi	Culture Day	noun
文化	ぶんか	bunka	culture	noun
明治	めいじ	meiji	Meiji period (1868-1912)	noun

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #21 Shichi-Go-San Festival

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

21

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
千歳飴	ちとせあめ	chitoseame	longevity candy	noun
羽織	はおり	haori	Japanese formal coat, haori coat	noun
着物	きもの	kimono	kimono	noun
袴	はかま	hakama	ceremonial skirt/ Formal men's divided skirt/ Japanese kilt	noun
七五三	しちごさん	shichigosan	celebration of child's third fifth and seventh years	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>着物の上に羽織を着る。 <i>Kimono no ue ni haori o kiru.</i></p> <p>You wear a haori coat on top of kimono.</p>	<p>私は着物が好きです。 <i>Watashi wa kimono ga suki desu.</i></p> <p>I like kimonos.</p>
---	--

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #22 Labor Thanksgiving Day

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

22

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
新嘗祭	にいなめさい	niinamesai	New Harvest Festival	noun
勤労	きんろう	kinrō	labor	noun
収穫	しゅうかく	shūkaku	harvest, crop	noun
勤労感謝の日	きんろうかんし ゃのひ	Kinrō kansha no hi	Labour Thanksgiving Day	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>そろそろ収穫の時期だ。 <i>Sorosoro shūkaku no jiki da.</i></p> <p>It's about time to harvest crops.</p>	<p>勤労感謝の日は、日々の勤労をねぎらう日 です。 <i>Kinrō kansha no hi wa, hibi no kinrō o negirau hi desu.</i></p> <p>Labour Thanksgiving Day is the day for rewarding daily hard work.</p>
---	--

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #23 Christmas

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

23

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
クリスマスケーキ	クリスマスケーキ	kurisumasu kēki	Christmas cake	noun
サンタクロース	サンタクロース	Santa Kurōsu	Santa Claus	proper noun
メリー・クリスマス！	メリー・クリスマス！	Merī kurisumasu!	Merry Christmas!	expression
クリスマス	クリスマス	kurisumasu	Christmas	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>サンタクロースは誰ですか。</p> <p><i>Santa Kurōsu wa dare desu ka.</i></p> <p>Who is Santa Claus?</p>	<p>メリークリスマス！</p> <p><i>Merī Kurisumasu!</i></p> <p>Merry Christmas!</p>
---	---

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #24 Year-End Parties

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

24

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
夏目漱石	そうせきなつめ	Sōseki Natsume	Sōseki Natsume, a popular Japanese writer	proper noun
忘れる	わすれる	wasureru	to forget	verb
おさけ	おさけ	o-sake	alcohol	noun
忘年会	ぼうねんかい	bōnen-kai	year-end party	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

<p>自分がどういう立場の人間か忘れてはいけません。</p> <p><i>Jibun ga dō iu tachiba no ningen ka wasurete wa ikemasen.</i></p> <p>Never forget where you come from.</p>	<p>わたしはおさをのみません。</p> <p><i>Watashi wa o-sake o nomimasen.</i></p> <p>I don't drink alcohol.</p>
<p>忘年会をしましょう。</p> <p><i>Bōnen-kai o shimashō!</i></p> <p>Let's have a year end party!</p>	

LESSON NOTES

Culture Class: Holidays in Japan S1 #25 New Year's Eve

CONTENTS

- 2 Vocabulary
- 2 Sample Sentences

25

VOCABULARY

Kanji	Kana	Romaji	English	Class
そば	そば	soba	soba, buckwheat noodles	noun
おせち料理	おせちりょうり	osechi ryōri	Food served during the New Year's Holidays	noun
大晦日	おおみそか	ōmisoka	the last day of a year	noun
年神	としがみ	Toshigami	God visiting each home at the year end	noun
晦日	みそか	misoka	the last day of each month in the lunar calendar	noun

SAMPLE SENTENCES

そばが食べたいです。 <i>Soba ga tabetai desu.</i> I want to eat buckwheat noodles.	お正月におせち料理を食べる。 <i>oshougatsu ni osechi ryouri wo taberu.</i> To eat a New Year's dish on New Year's day.
--	--